




As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 87

## A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the images contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

## **Safe Driving P. 31**

For Safe Driving P. 32

Seat Belts P. 36

Airbags P. 47

## **Instrument Panel P. 89**

Indicators P. 90

Gauges and Displays P. 103

## **Controls P. 109**

Clock P. 110

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 112

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 141

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 161

Adjusting the Seats P. 164

Climate Control System\* P. 183

## **Features P. 189**

Audio System\* P. 190

General Information on the Audio System P. 246

Hands-Free Telephone System\*/*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®\* P. 262, 285

## **Driving P. 311**

Before Driving P. 312

Towing a Trailer P. 316

Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 351

## **Maintenance P. 355**

Before Performing Maintenance P. 356      Maintenance Reminder\* P. 359

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 394

Heating\* and Cooling System\*/Climate Control System\* Maintenance P. 408

## **Handling the Unexpected P. 417**

Tools P. 418

If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 419

Overheating P. 433

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 435

## **Information P. 451**

Specifications P. 452

Identification Numbers P. 455

# Contents

Child Safety P. 60

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 86

Safety Labels P. 87

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 133

Security System P. 136

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 144

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 172

Heating\* and Cooling\* P. 179

Audio System Basic Operation P. 197, 216

Audio Error Messages P. 243

Customized Features\* P. 250

When Driving P. 317

Refueling P. 352

Braking P. 342

Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 354

Parking Your Vehicle P. 347

Maintenance Schedule P. 361

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 396

Cleaning P. 410

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 372

Battery P. 403

Accessories and Modifications P. 415

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 382

Remote Transmitter Care P. 406

Engine Does Not Start P. 427

Fuses P. 440

Jump Starting P. 430

Emergency Towing P. 448

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 432

Utility Compliance\* P. 456

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 31

Instrument Panel P. 89

Controls P. 109

Features P. 189

Driving P. 311

Maintenance P. 355

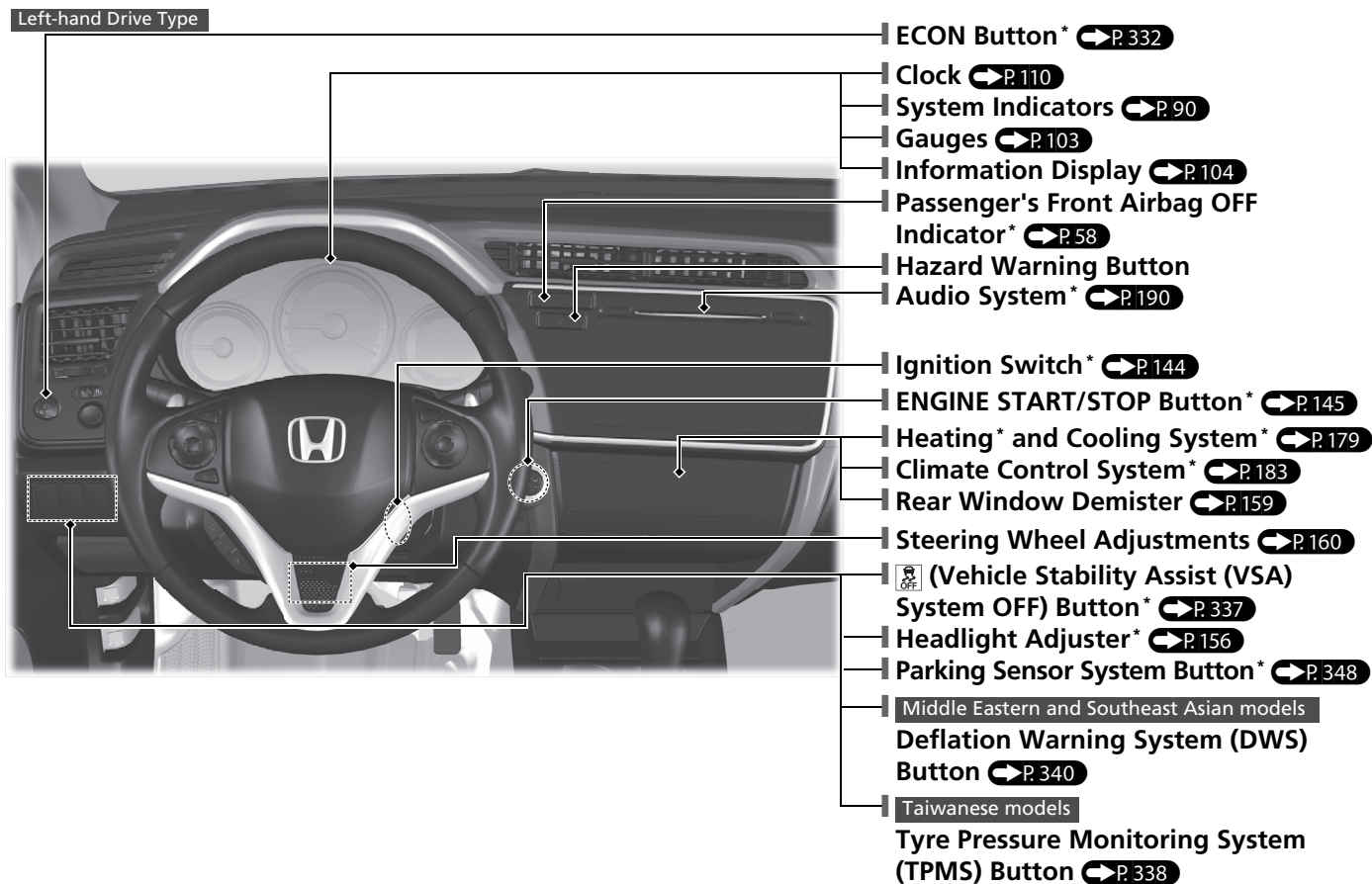
Handling the Unexpected P. 417

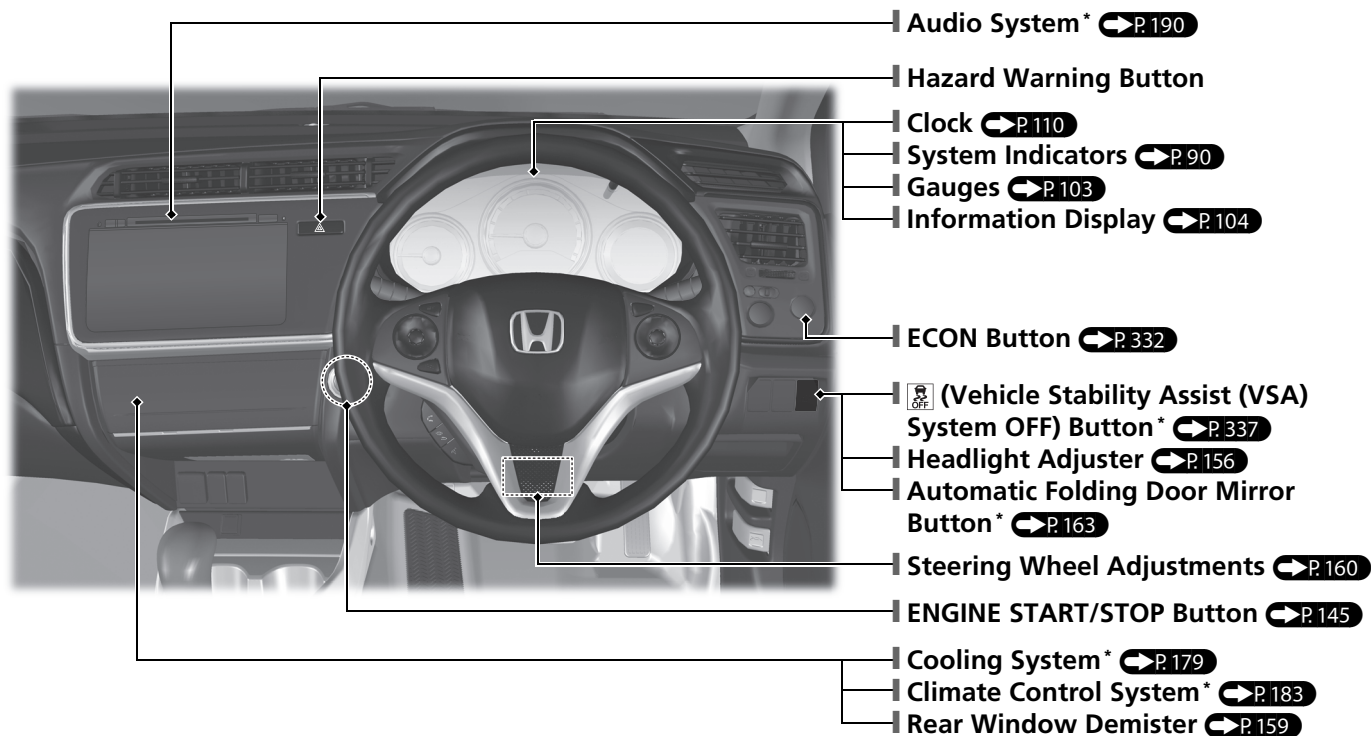
Information P. 451

Index P. 459

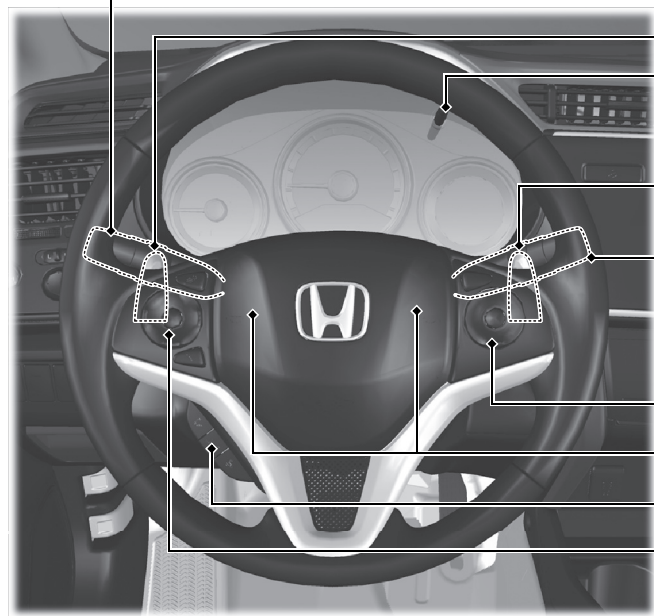


# Visual Index





# Visual Index



Except Malaysian models

Headlights/Turn Signals ➡ P. 149

Front Fog Lights\* ➡ P. 153

Rear Fog Light\* ➡ P. 153

Malaysian models

Wipers/Washers ➡ P. 157

Paddle Shifter\* (Shift Down) ➡ P. 329

Brightness Control ➡ P. 158

(Select/Reset) Knob\* ➡ P. 104

Paddle Shifter\* (Shift Up) ➡ P. 329

Except Malaysian models

Wipers/Washers ➡ P. 157

Malaysian models

Headlights/Turn Signals ➡ P. 149

Front Fog Lights\* ➡ P. 153

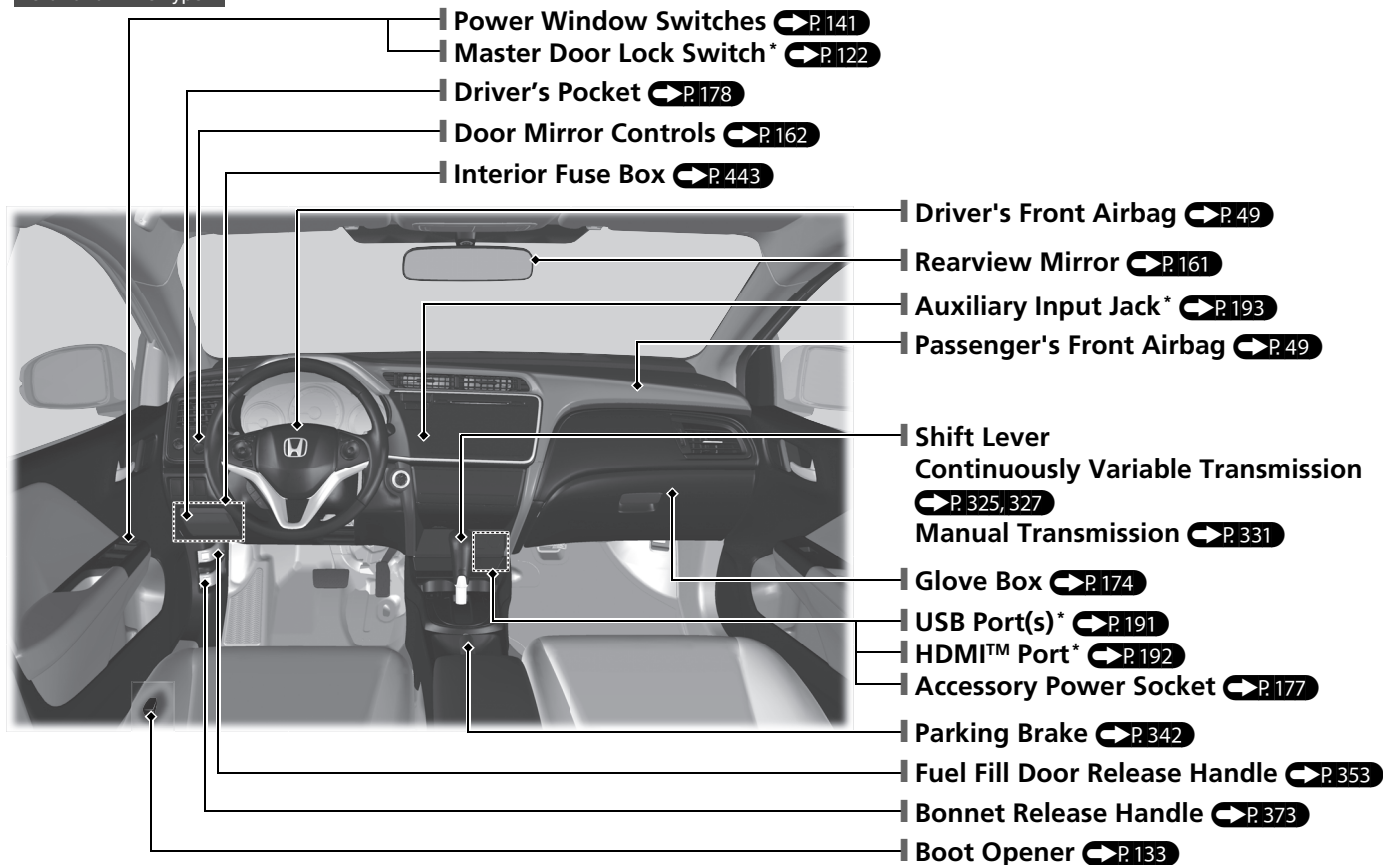
Cruise Control Buttons\* ➡ P. 333

Horn (Press an area around )

Hands-Free Telephone System\* ➡ P. 262, 285

Audio Remote Controls\* ➡ P. 195

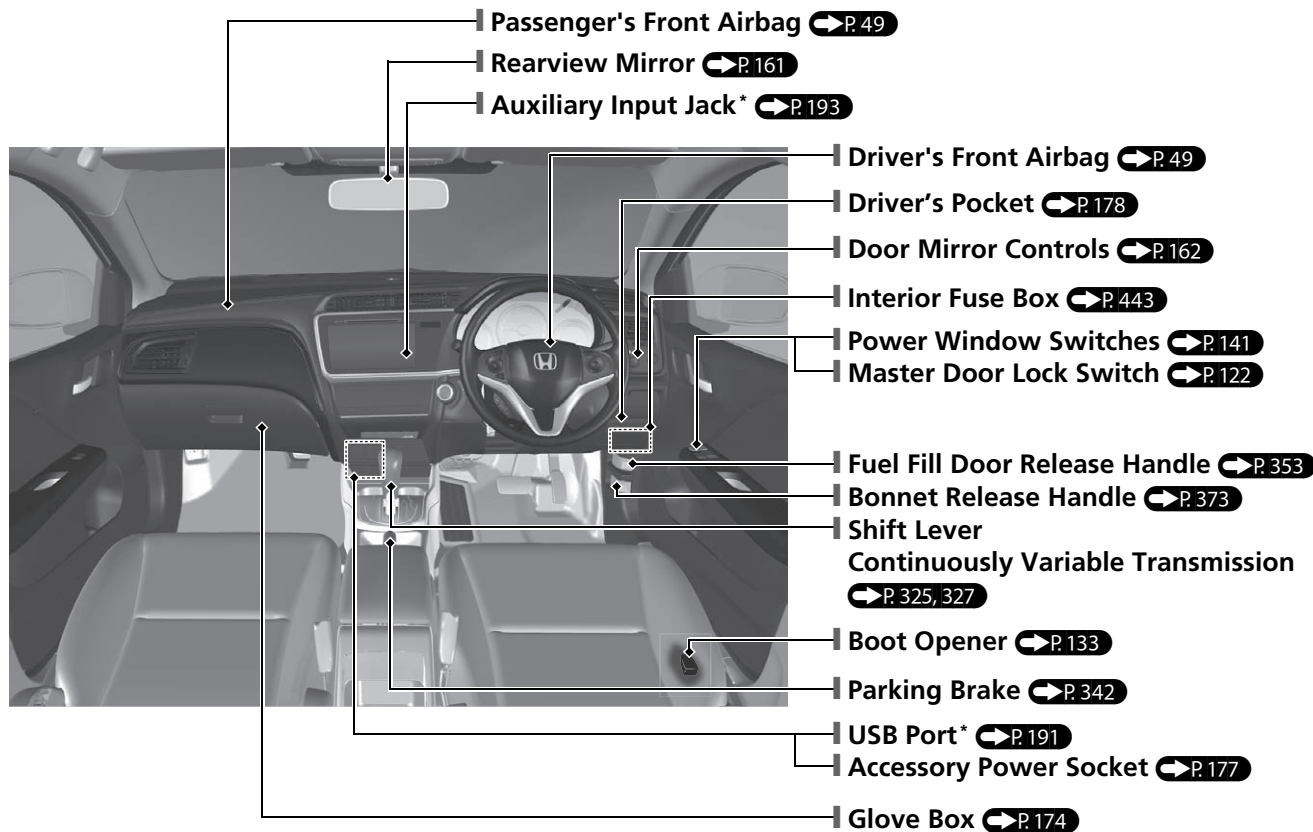
## Left-hand Drive Type

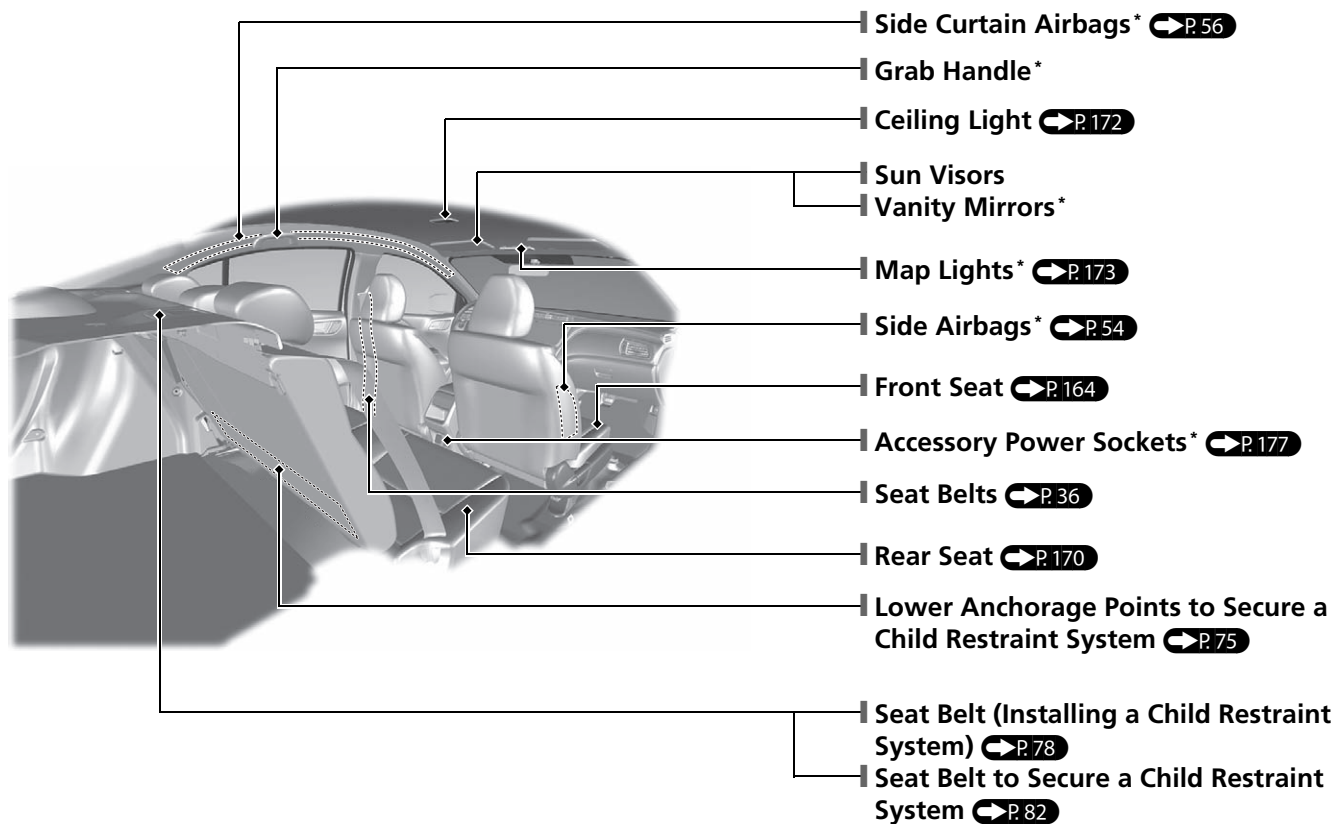


\* Not available on all models

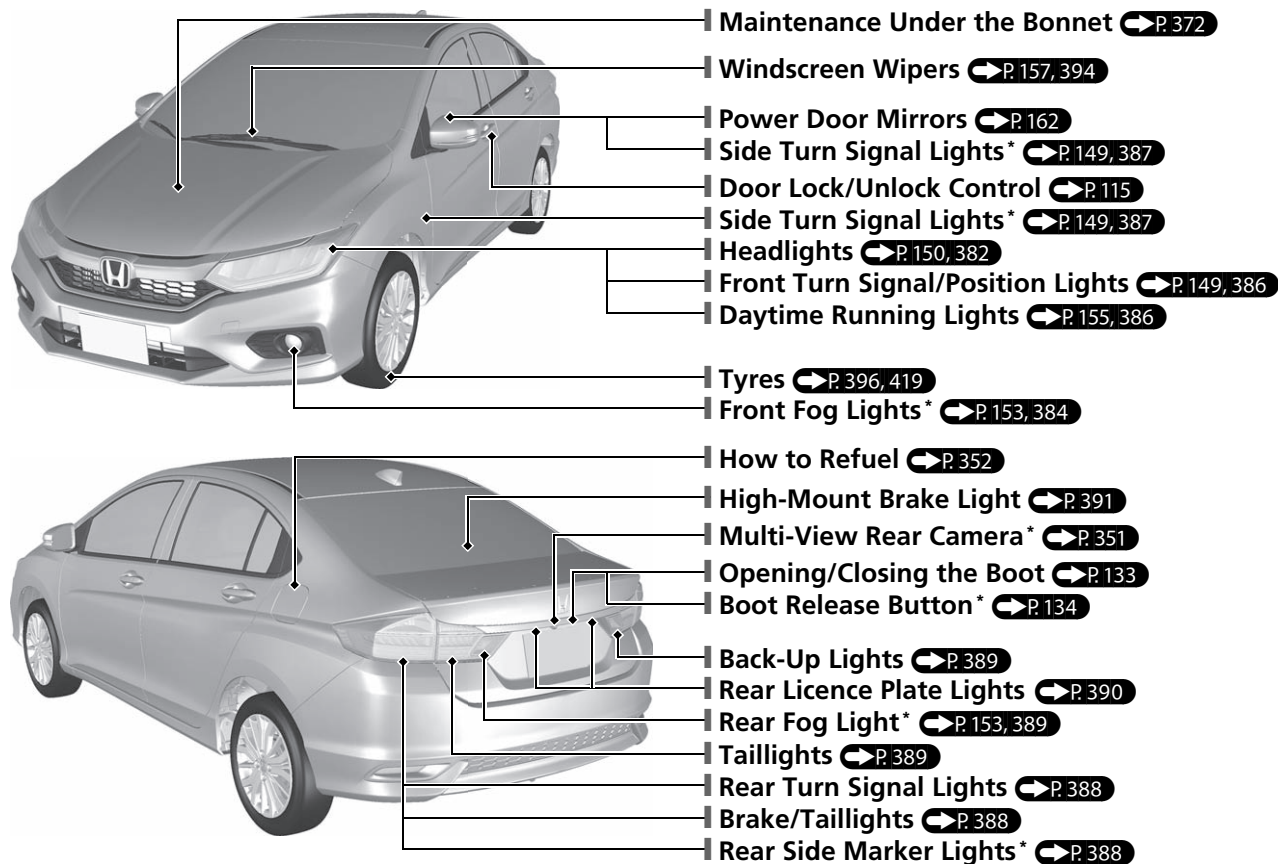
# Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type





# Visual Index

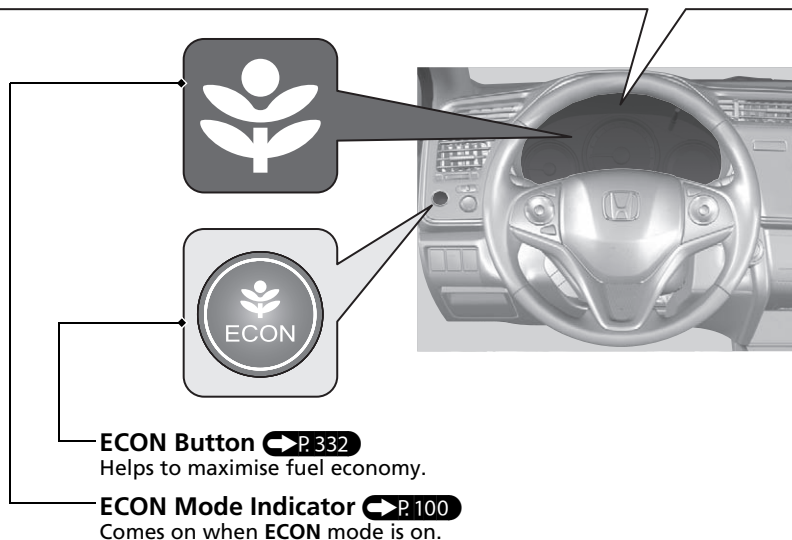
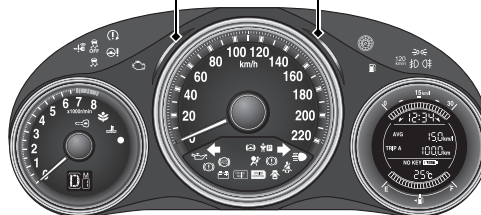


# Eco Assist System\*

## Ambient Meter

- Changes colour to reflect your driving style.  
Green: Fuel efficient driving  
Blue green: Moderate acceleration/ deceleration  
Blue: Aggressive acceleration/ deceleration
- The ambient meter colour changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.

Ambient Meter





# Safe Driving ➡ P.31

## Airbags ➡ P.47

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety ➡ P.60

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P.86

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts ➡ P.36

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist ➡ P.312

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.















Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

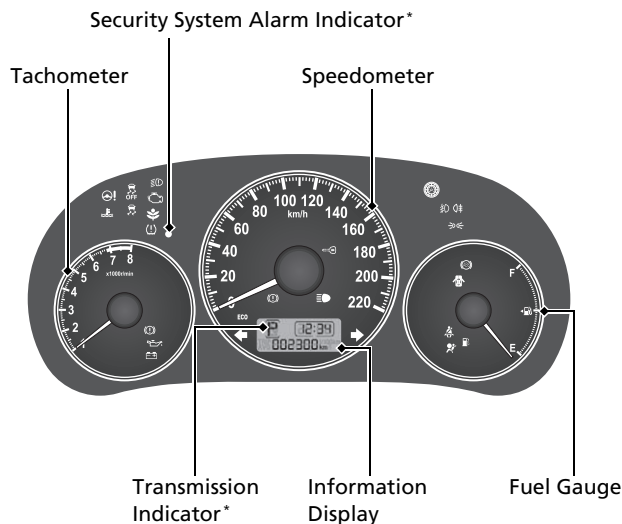
# Instrument Panel P.89

## Gauges P.103 / Information Display P.104 / System Indicators P.90





Type A

### System Indicators









-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator\*
-  VSA OFF Indicator\*
-  ECON Mode Indicator\*
-  High Temperature Indicator (Red)
-  Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)\*
- ECO** ECO Indicator
-  Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator\*



### Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator\*
-  High-Beam Indicator
-  Front Fog Light Indicator\*
-  Rear Fog Light Indicator\*
















### System Indicators

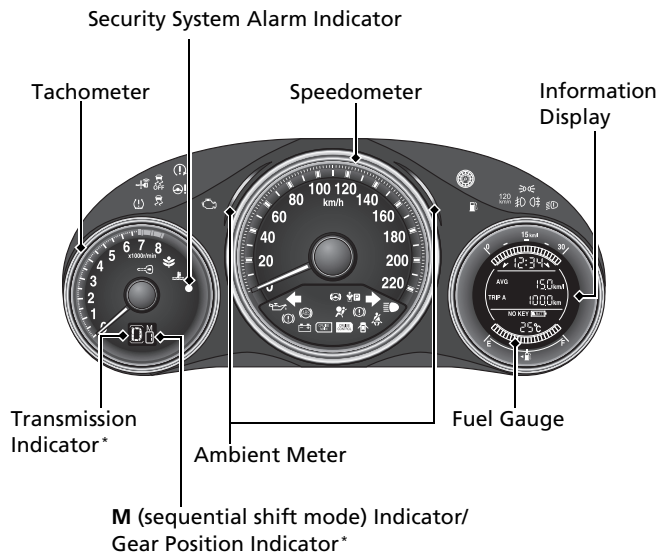
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Door/Boot Open Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  Light Control Indicator\*

\* Not available on all models





## Type B

## System Indicators















-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Keyless Access System Indicator\*
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator\*
-  VSA OFF Indicator\*
-  ECON Mode Indicator\*
-  High Temperature Indicator (Red)
-  Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)\*
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Starter System Indicator\*



## Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High-Beam Indicator
-  Front Fog Light Indicator\*
-  Rear Fog Light Indicator\*

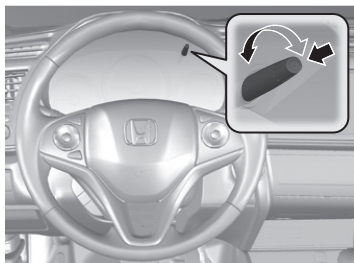
## System Indicators

-  Middle Eastern and Southeast Asian models  
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator
-  Taiwanese models  
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  120 km/h  
Speed Alarm Indicator\*
-  MAINT REQ'D  
Maintenance Required Indicator\*
-  Door/Boot Open Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  Shift to Park Indicator\*
-  Rotate Wheel Indicator\*
-  CRUISE MAIN  
CRUISE MAIN Indicator\*
-  CRUISE CONTROL  
CRUISE CONTROL Indicator\*
-  Light Control Indicator\*

# Controls ➡ P.109

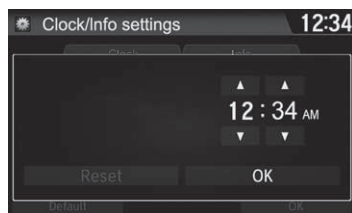
## Clock ➡ P.110

### Models without Display Audio system



- 1 Press repeatedly until the displayed time begins flashing.
- 2 Turn to adjust the minutes.  
▶ As you increase or decrease the minutes, the hour moves forward or backward.
- 3 Press to complete clock adjustment.

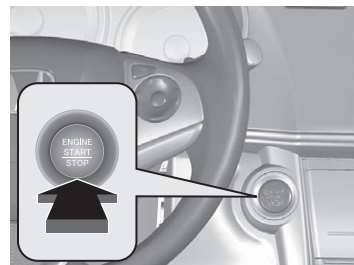
### Models with Display Audio system



- 1 Enter the **clock adjustment** screen.  
➡ P.111
- 2 Select or to change hour.
- 3 Select or to change minute, then select **OK**.

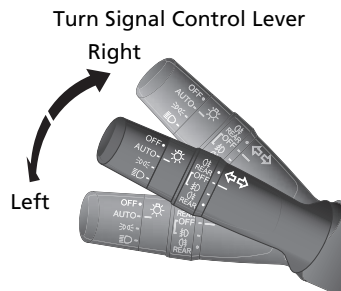
## ENGINE START/STOP Button \* ➡ P.145

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.

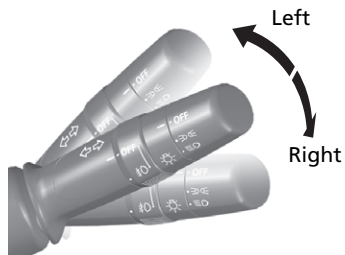


## Turn Signals ➡ P.149

Except Malaysian models

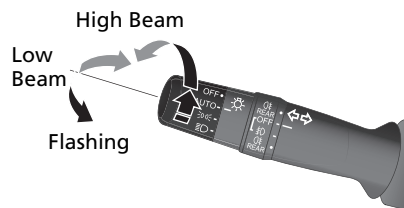


Malaysian models



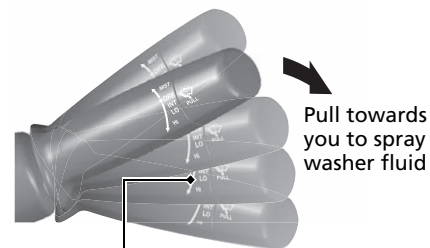
## Lights ➡ P.150

Light Control Switches



## Wipers and Washers ➡ P.157

Wiper/Washer Control Lever



MIST

OFF

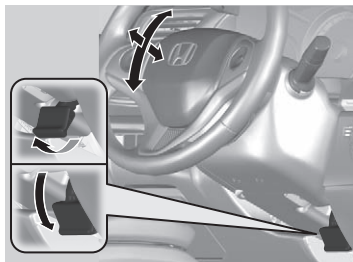
INT: Low speed with intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe

## Steering Wheel ➡ P.160

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

➡ P.121

### Latin American models

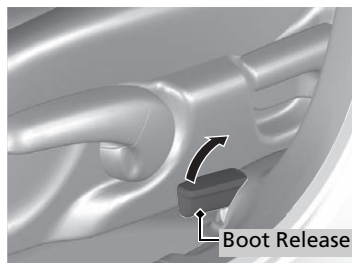
- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

### Except Latin American models

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



## Boot ➡ P.133

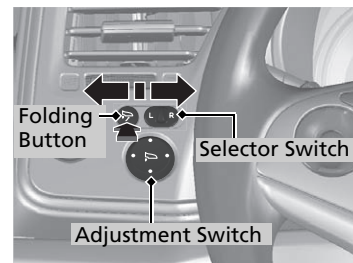


- To unlock and open the boot:
- Pull the boot release.
- Press the boot release button\* on the remote transmitter or keyless remote.
- Press the boot release button\* on the boot lid.

## Power Door Mirrors

➡ P.162


- With the ignition switch in ON (II)\*1, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button\* to fold in and out the door mirrors

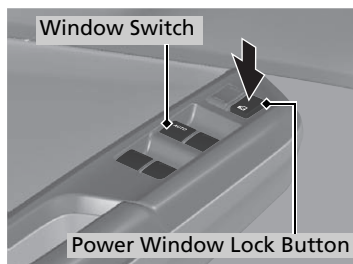


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models






## Power Windows

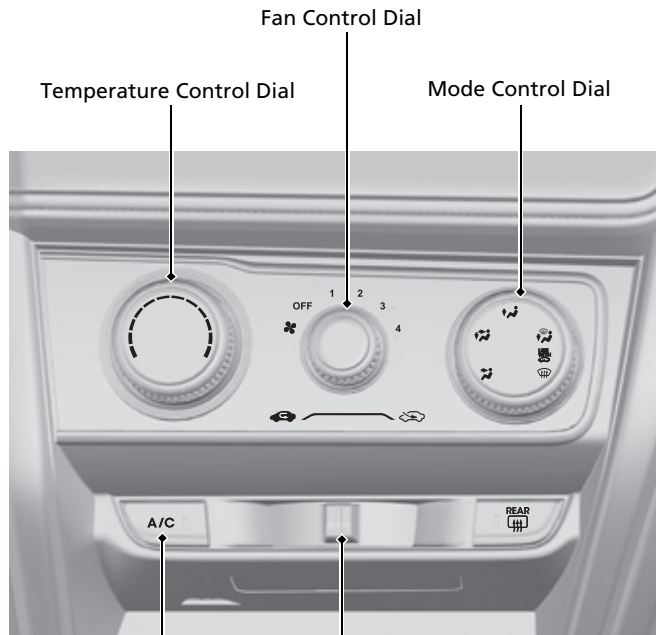
- With the ignition switch in ON \*, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position, each passenger's window switch is disabled.









\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Heating\* and Cooling System\*

- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Turn the mode control dial to  /  /  /  to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Rotate the fan control dial to **OFF** to turn the system off.
- Turn the mode control dial to  to defrost the windscreen.






-  Air flows from dashboard vents.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
-  Air flows from windscreen demister vents.

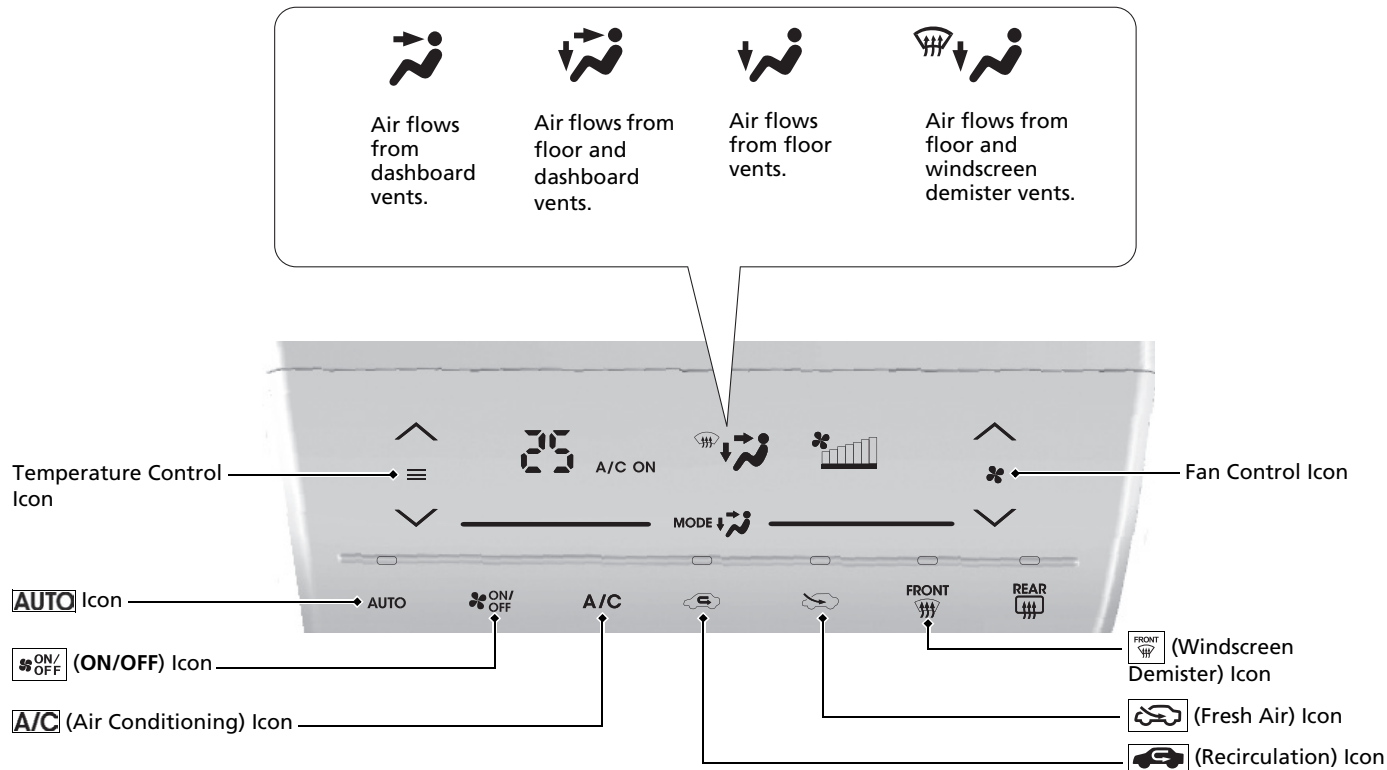
 (Air Conditioning) Button

 (Recirculation) /  (Fresh Air) Lever



# Climate Control System \*

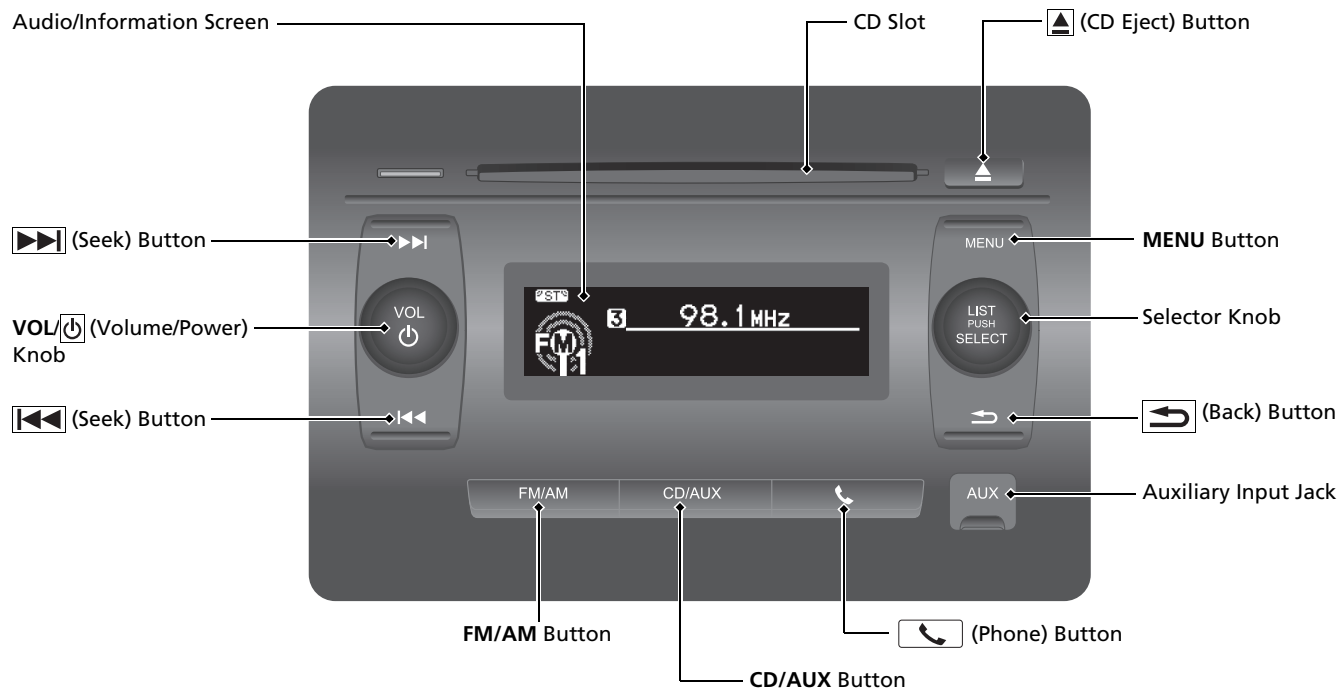
- Select the  icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the  (ON/OFF) icon to turn the system on and off.
- Select the  icon to defrost the windscreen.



# Features P.189

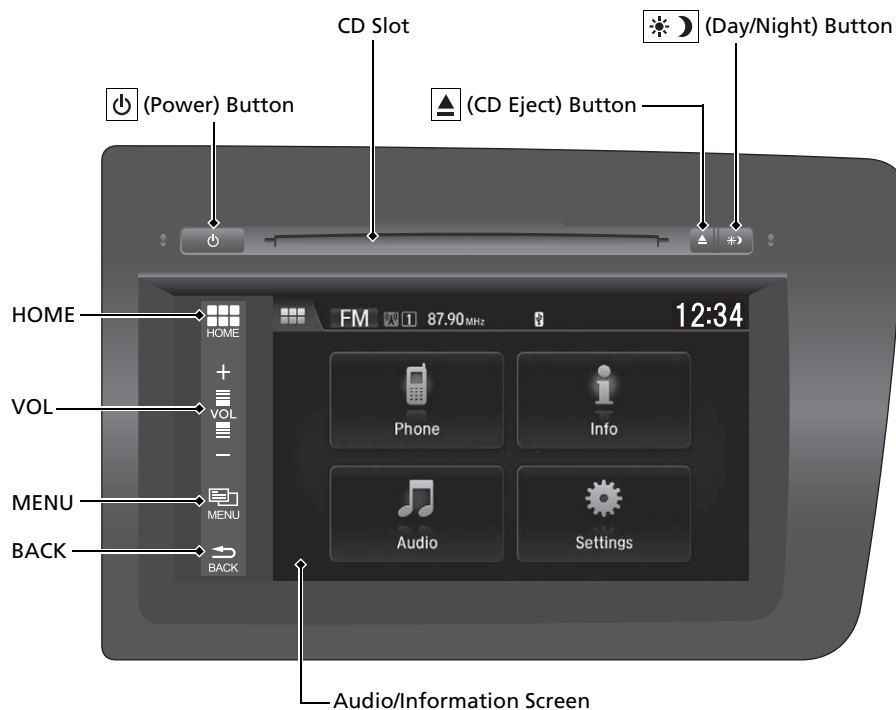
## Audio system \* P.190

Models with monochrome audio system



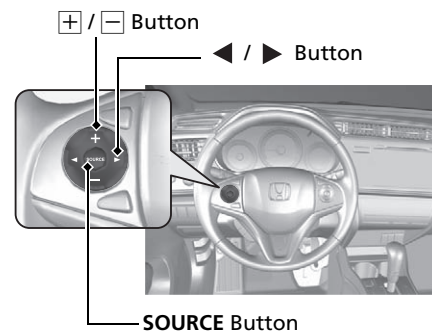
\* Not available on all models

## Models with Display Audio system



## Audio Remote Controls\*

➔ P.195



- **+ / - (Volume) Button**  
Press and release to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE Button**  
Press and release to change the audio modes: FM1\*/FM2\*/FM\*/AM/CD/USB/iPod/Apps\*/Bluetooth® Audio/AUX\*/AUX HDMITM\*.
- **◀ / ▶ Button**  
Radio: Press and release to change the preset station.  
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.


CD/USB/iPod/Bluetooth® Audio device:

Press and release to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder.

# Driving P.311

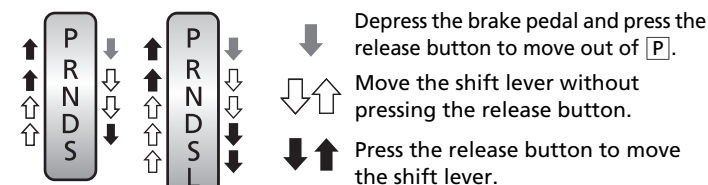
## Manual Transmission\* P.331

## Continuously Variable Transmission\*

 P.325, 327

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

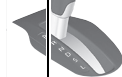
### Shifting



Models with paddle shifter

Models without paddle shifter

Shift Lever



Release Button

**P**

#### Park

- Turn off or start the engine.
- Transmission is locked.

**R**

#### Reverse

- Used when reversing.

**N**

#### Neutral

- Transmission is not locked.

**D**

#### Drive

- Normal driving.
- On models with paddle shifter, D-paddle shift mode can be used.

**S**

#### Drive(S)

- Sequential shift mode can be used.

Models with paddle shifter

Models without paddle shifter

**S**

#### Drive (S)

- Better acceleration
- Increased engine braking
- Going up or down hills

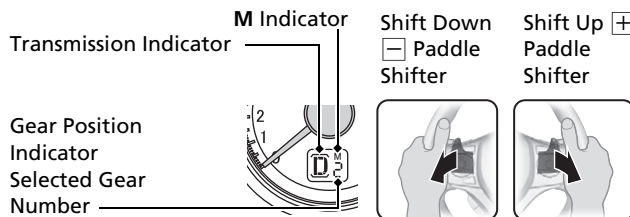
**L**

#### Low

- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

### Paddle Shifters\* P.329

- Paddle shifters allow you to shift gears much like a manual transmission (1st through 5th). This is useful for engine braking.
- D-paddle shift mode: The transmission will shift back to automatic mode once the system detects that the vehicle is cruising.
- Sequential shift mode: Holds the selected gear, and the **M** indicator comes on.
- The selected gear position is shown in the instrument panel.



## VSA On and Off\* ➡ P.337

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control\* ➡ P.333

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press **–/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

Taiwanese models

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ➡ P.338

The TPMS detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

Cambodian, Laotian and Middle Eastern models

## Deflation Warning System (DWS) ➡ P.340

The DWS detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

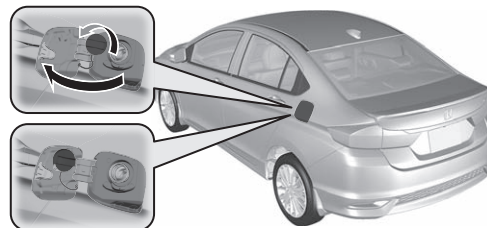
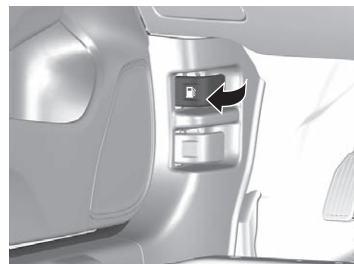
## Refueling ➡ P. 352

### Fuel recommendation:

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

**Fuel tank capacity: 40 L**

- 1** Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.
- 2** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 3** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



# Maintenance P.355

## Under the Bonnet P.372

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and window washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid and clutch fluid\*.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



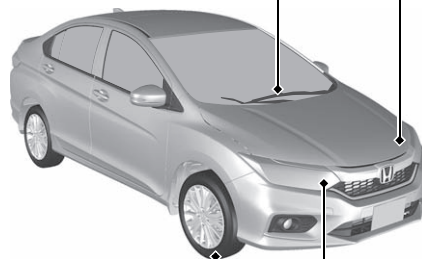
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades P.394

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



## Tyres P.396

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights P.382

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected ➡ P.417

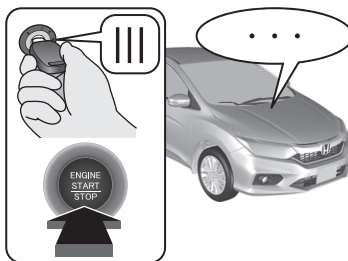
## Flat Tyre ➡ P.419

- Park in a safe place and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the boot.



## Engine Won't Start ➡ P.427

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Overheating ➡ P.433

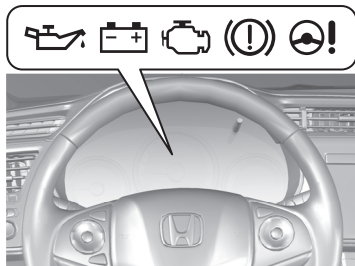
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



## Indicators Come On

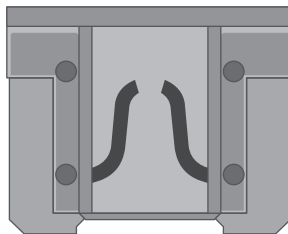
➡ P.435

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse ➡ P.440

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing

➡ P.448

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.





# What to Do If



Models without keyless access system

The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**. Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?



- The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without keyless access system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system

- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Models without keyless access system

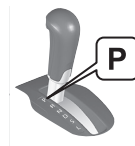
The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0** and I cannot remove the key. Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**. Why?



The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

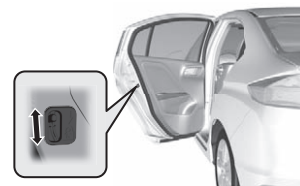


This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

---

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.



To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open a door within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.

**Models without keyless access system**

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

**Models with keyless access system**

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger\* are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

---



---

**Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**



**The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.**

---

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	32
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	34
Safety Checklist .....	35

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts .....	36
Fastening a Seat Belt .....	41
Seat Belt Inspection.....	45
Anchorage Points.....	46

## Airbags

Airbag System Components .....	47
Types of Airbags .....	49

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	49
Side Airbags* .....	54
Side Curtain Airbags* .....	56
Airbag System Indicators.....	57
Airbag Care .....	59

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	60
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	64
Safety of Larger Children .....	83

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	86
--------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	87
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

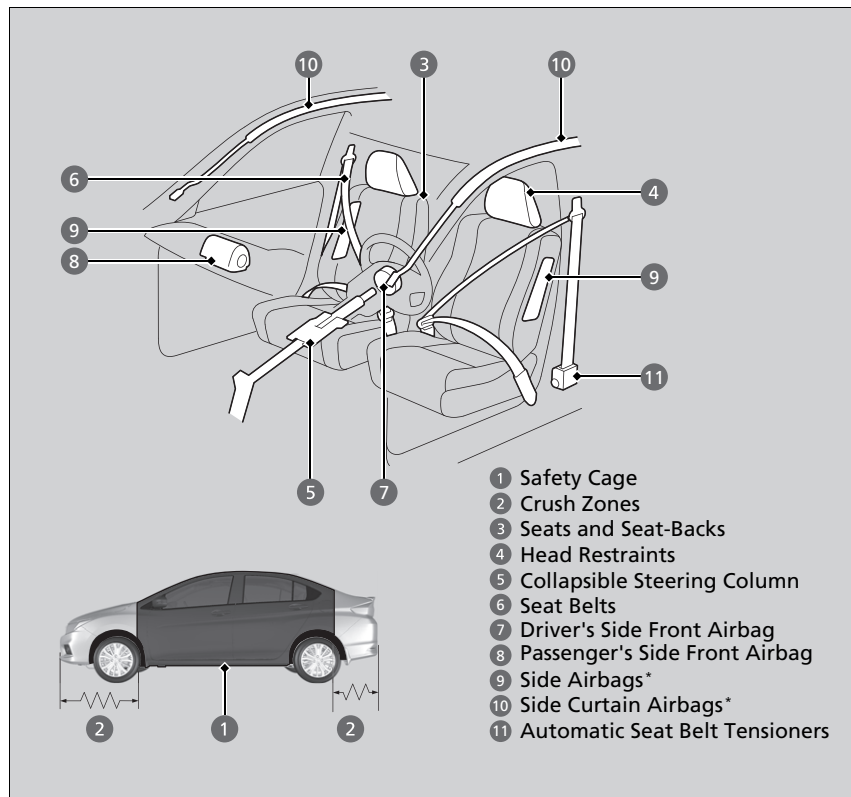
**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

**■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which the children and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in injury or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave children in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

➤ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 164

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

➤ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 167

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

➤ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint system according to a child's age, height and weight.

➤ **Child Safety** P. 60

### ➤ Safety Checklist

If the door/boot open indicator is on, a door and/or boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the indicator goes off.

➤ **Door/Boot Open Indicator** P. 95





## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

## ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All seating positions (front, rear outer and centre\*) are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The rear outer and centre seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➡ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 78

## »» About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

### Models with lap seat belt

Your vehicle's rear centre seat is equipped with the lap seat belt. This seat belt does not come with an emergency locking retractor.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduces the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## ►► About Your Seat Belts


### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.


If the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1 and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ▶▶ Seat Belt Reminder

#### Models with front passenger seat belt reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt a few seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

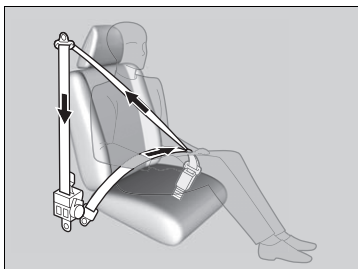
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



## ►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

### Models with side curtain airbags

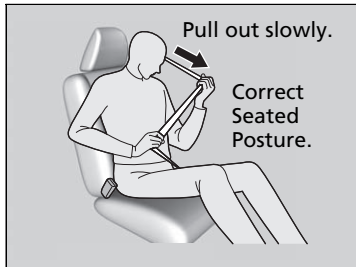
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## Fastening a Seat Belt

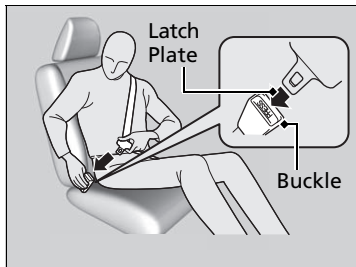
After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

► **Adjusting the Seats** P. 164

### ■ Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ► Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

**⚠ WARNING**

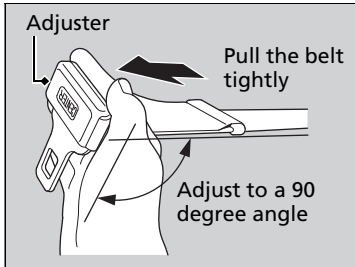
Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

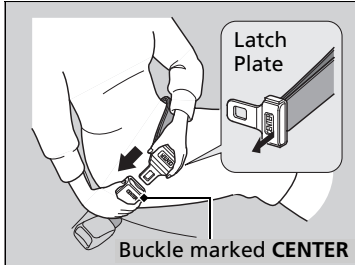
To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

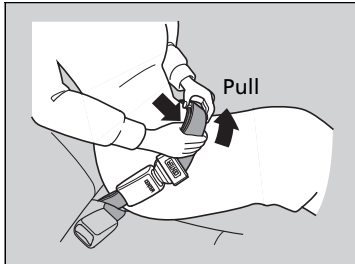
## Lap Belt\*



1. Hold the latch plate perpendicular to the tightly-pulled belt. The belt length becomes adjustable.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.  
▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.



3. Position the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up the belt so it fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## ►► Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### ►► Seat Belt Inspection

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

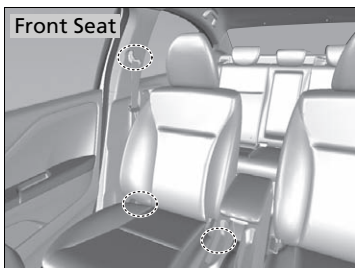
**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

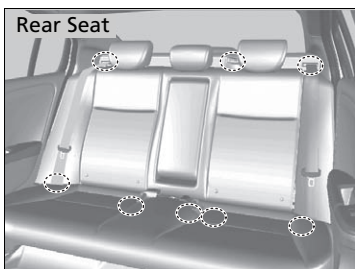
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points

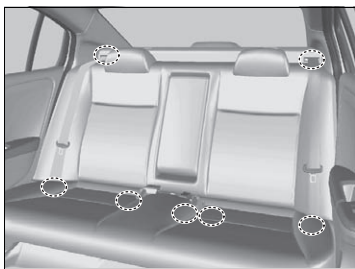


When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



### Models with three lap/shoulder seat belts

The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.



### Models with lap seat belt

The outer positions of the rear seat have lap/shoulder belts.

The centre position has a lap belt.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side\*, and side curtain\* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS**

### **AIRBAG.**

#### Models with side airbags

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG.**

#### Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.**

- An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

#### Models with passenger front airbag off system

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ► Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

# Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags\*:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags\*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

## Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.


**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

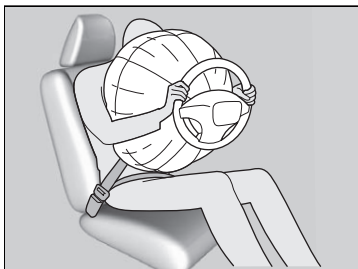
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags\* and side curtain airbags\* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags\* offer the protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

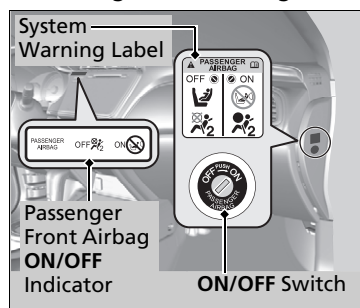
\* Not available on all models



## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the ignition key or built-in key.

### ■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



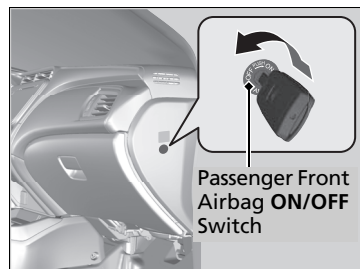
When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

### ■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]**\*1. Remove the key.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the ignition key or built-in key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ► Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*

### ⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.


If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

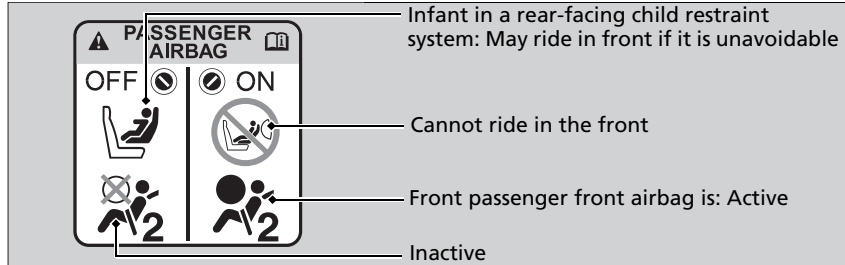
## ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

## ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



## ▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System \*

### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's ignition key or built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply excessive load on the ignition key or built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

### ➡ Protecting Infants P. 64

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

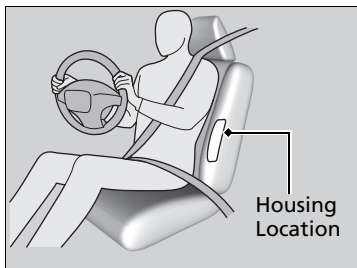
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Side Airbags\*

The side airbags help to protect the upper torso of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

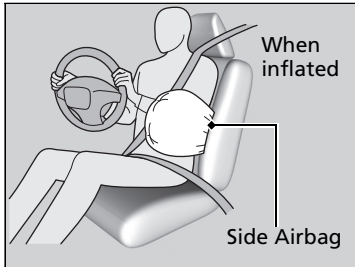
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Side Airbags\*

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

## ■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## ►► Side Airbags\*

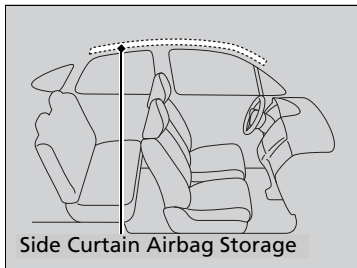
Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

\* Not available on all models

## Side Curtain Airbags\*

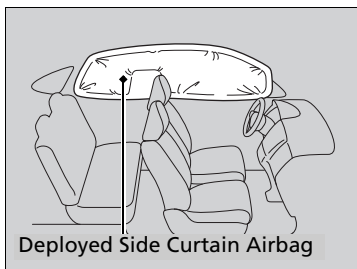
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

### ►► Side Curtain Airbags\*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display\*.

### ■ SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator



#### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ■ SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator

#### **WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

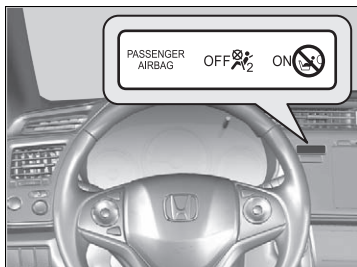
#### **WARNING**

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

*Continued*

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator\*



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

#### ⌘ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.



## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.


Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirements.

#### **Malaysian, Latin American and Taiwanese models**

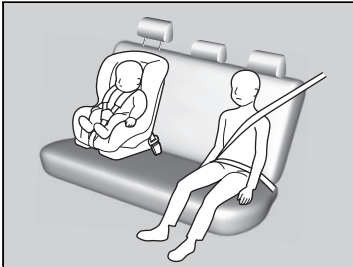
Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 67

#### **Except Malaysian, Latin American and Taiwanese models**

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag\* can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

#### ►► Protecting Child Passengers

##### Models with lockable retractor

### **⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's sun visor. There is also a warning label\* on the passenger's doorjamb.

Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 87

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

## ► Protecting Child Passengers

## Front Passenger's Sun Visor

**⚠ WARNING**

**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

## Taiwanese models



- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

For some types

**⚠ WARNING**



**Extreme Hazard!**

**DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

**➡ Opening/Closing the Power Windows**  
P. 141

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

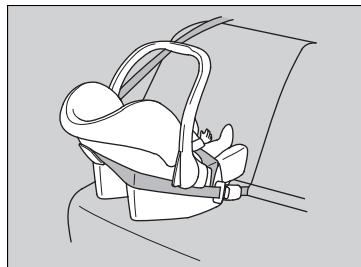
**Models with lockable retractor**

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



#### Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

### Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

#### ⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ►► Protecting Infants

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front facing position.

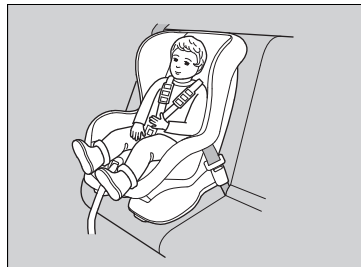
Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

► **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** \* P. 52

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child restraint system manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## ►► Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage\* compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether\* for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when not using the lower anchorage\* system. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX\* restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

## ► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage\*-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage\*-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

The two outer rear seats in your vehicle are equipped with lower anchorages. However, not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use any lower anchorage-compatible (ISOFIX) child restraint system, refer to the following tables to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

## ▣ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Taiwanese models

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

MASS Group	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions			Recommended Child Restraint Systems*¹
			Rear seat			
			L-side	R-side	Centre	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	
Group 0 Up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IL	IL	X	
Group 0+ Up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	IL	IL	X	
	D	ISO/R2	IL	IL	X	
	C	ISO/R3	IL	IL	X	
Group I 9 kg to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	IL	IL	X	
	C	ISO/R3	IL	IL	X	
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF	X	
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF	X	
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF	X	
Group II 15 kg to 25 kg			X	X	X	
Group III 22 kg to 36 kg			X	X	X	

► Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

---

IUF:	Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
IL:	Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the "specific vehicle", "restricted" or "semiuniversal" categories.
X:	Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
*1:	The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

---

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer's instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

## ■ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Your vehicle has the lower anchorages in either of the two outer rear seat. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used.

## ☒ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Taiwanese models

■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt

MASS Group	Seat position			Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
	Rear seat			
	L-side	R-side	Centre	
Group 0 Up to 10 kg	U	U	U	
Group 0+ Up to 13 kg	U	U	U	
Group I 9 kg to 18 kg	U	U	U	
Group II 15 kg to 25 kg	U	U	U	
Group III 22 kg to 36 kg	U	U	U	

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

\*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda’s recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer’s list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

## Information of Adaptability of the Child Restraint System in Several Seat Positions

### Malaysian models

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass Group		Seating position		
		Front Passenger	Rear Passenger	
			L/R Side	Centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	U or IL (Honda BABY SAFE ISOFIX)	U
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF*1, *2	U or IUF (Size class A, B1, B)	U
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF*1, *2	U	U
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF*1, *2	U	U

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this list.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*1: Seat-back angle to the upright position (Front most lock position).

\*2: Move the front seat to its slide rail rearmost position.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

**For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.**

### Latin American models

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Age group	Seating position in the vehicle			
	Front seat		Rear outer seat	Rear centre seat
	Passenger front airbag OFF	ON/OFF switch position ON		
Up to 2 years old (~13 kg)	Baby-Safe Plus Original Honda*1, *5 or Universal*2, *5	Do not use it in front seat.	IL*3 (Baby-Safe Plus Original Honda*1) or Universal*2	Baby-Safe Plus Original Honda*1 or Universal*2
Older than 9 months up to 4 years old (from 9 to 18 kg)	Duo Plus Original Honda*1, *5 or Universal*2, *5, *6	Duo Plus Original Honda*1, *5 or Front Facing Universal*2, *5, *6	Duo Plus Original Honda*1 or IUF*4 or Universal*2	Duo Plus Original Honda*1 or Universal*2
Older than 4 years old up to 12 years old (from 15 to 36 kg)	Universal*2, *5, *6	Front Facing Universal*2, *5, *6	Universal*2	Universal*2

### Description

\*1: Available in some markets

\*2: Universal The system is suitable and approved to be used for children in respective ages.  
It can be used in the front or rear seat if installed according to manufacture's instructions, following traffic safety standards.  
NOTE: When securing the child restraint system using the seat belt, use the seat belt equipped in the vehicle only.

\*3: IL Suitable for particular ISO FIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this table.

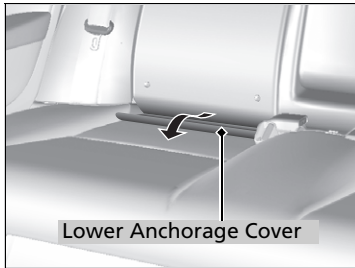
\*4: IUF Suitable for front facing ISO FIX child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this age group.

\*5: Move the front seat to its rearmost position and adjust the front seat-back angle to the most upright position.

\*6: If you cannot fix the Child Restraint System stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back side of the Child Restraint System, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.

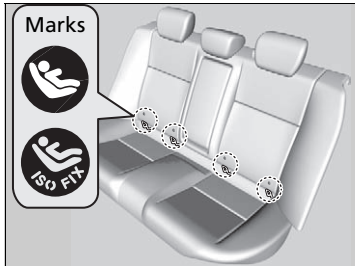
## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



### Models with lower anchorage cover

1. Open the lower anchorage cover.



### All models

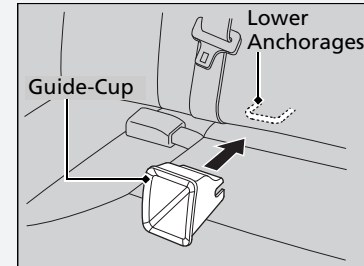
2. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

## ► Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

### ⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.

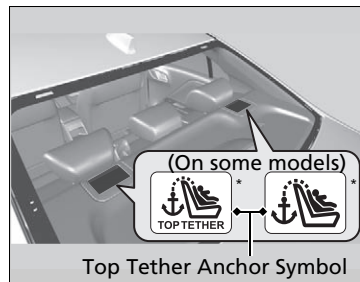
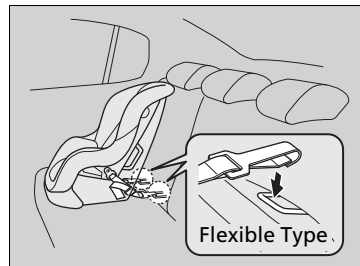
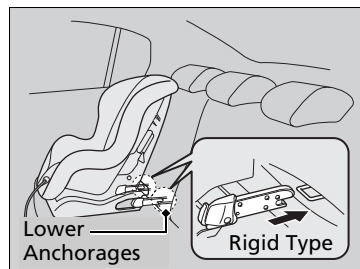


### Models with lower anchorage cover

When not using the lower anchorages, store the lower anchorage cover between the rear seat cushion and backrest.

\* Not available on all models





3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

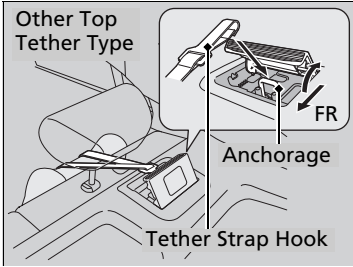
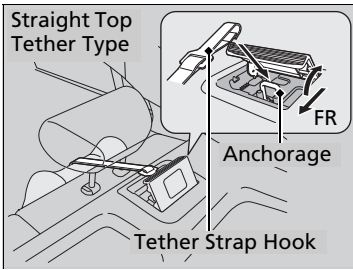
4. Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint or pillow.

#### ► Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.



**Models with adjustable head restraint**

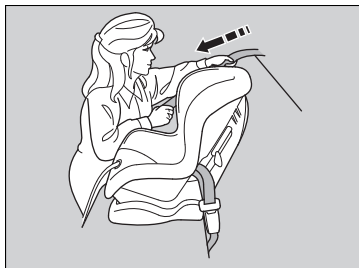
5. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



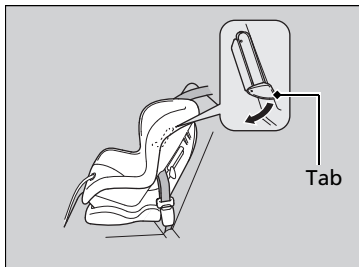
1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



### Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.



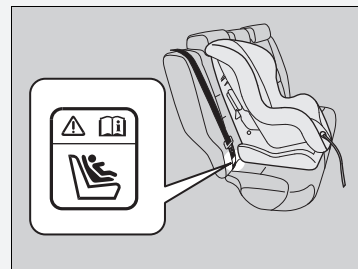
5. Let the seat belt if it is completely retracted it unlocks wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.

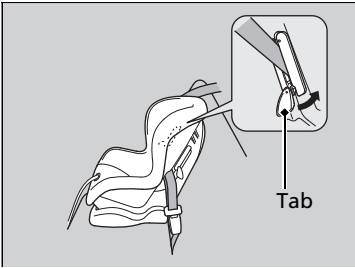
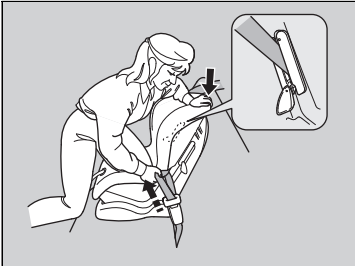
► If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 5.

## ►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor\*, pull the shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

The seat belt with a lockable retractor\* has a label as shown in the image.





6. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

7. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

#### Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.

4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

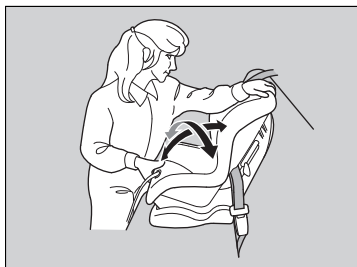
6. Go to step 8.

#### ►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

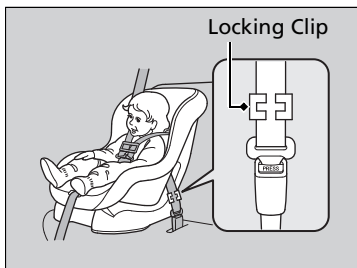
#### Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



**All models**

8. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
9. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



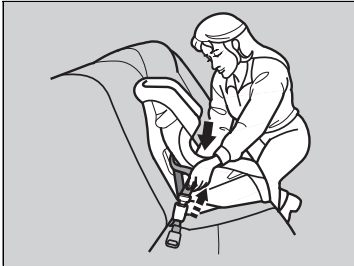
**Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor**

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate.  
Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate.  
Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 8 and 9.

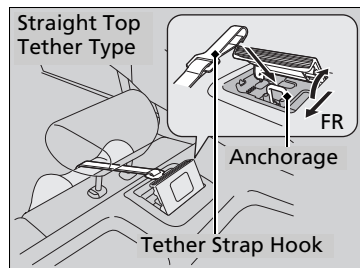
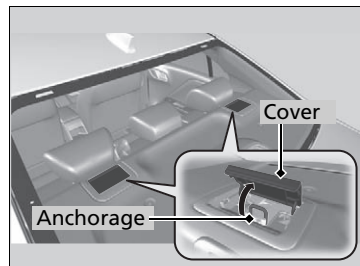
## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap Belt\*



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Pull hard on the loose end of the belt to remove any slack.
  - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
4. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.

### Models with adjustable head restraint

2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

## ► Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for forward facing child seats when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ►► Safety of Larger Children

#### ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

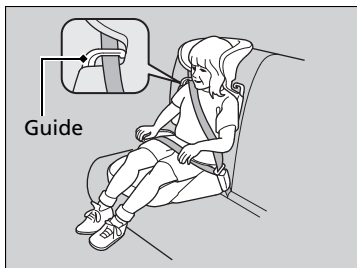
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.



## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A back-rest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the back-rest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the back-rest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

## Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


### Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

#### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

#### Carbon Monoxide Gas

### WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

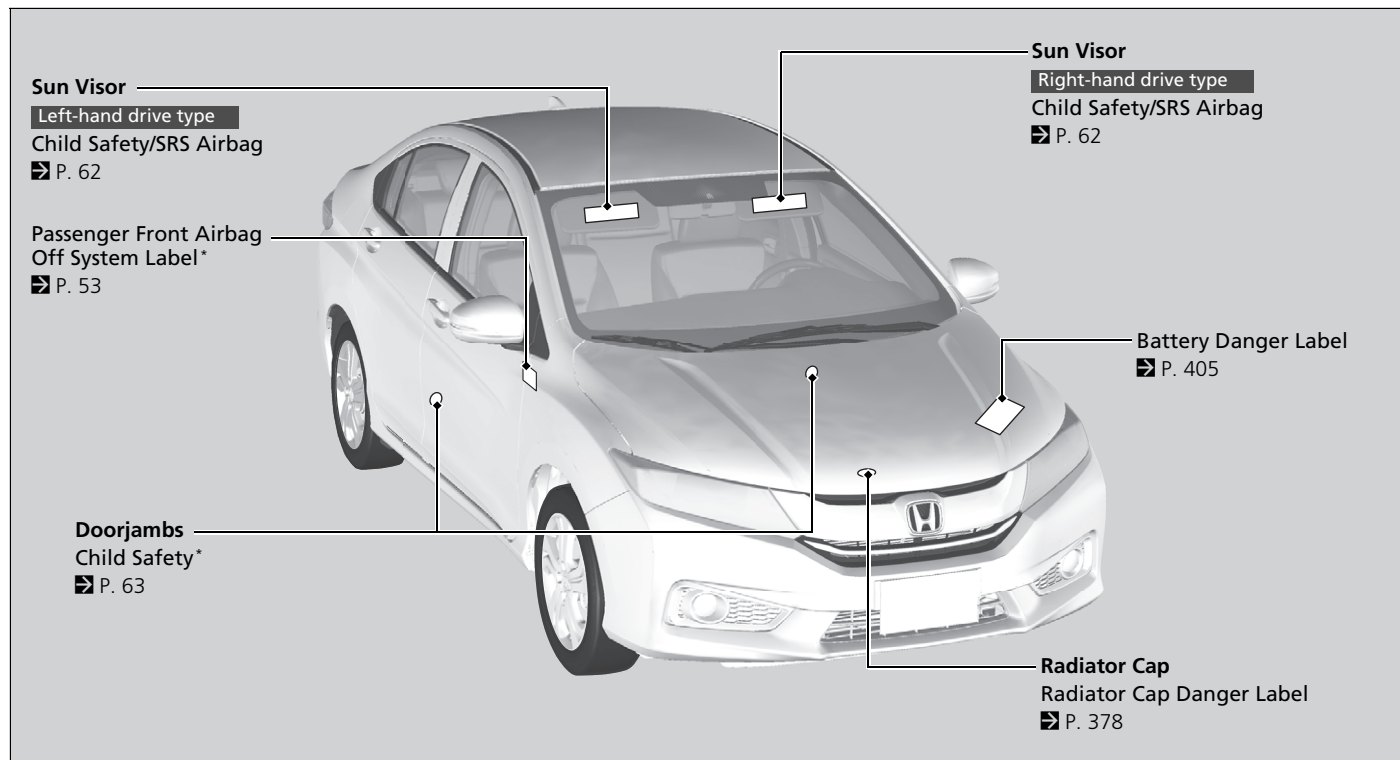
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.  
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed.  
Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\* Not available on all models



# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.












## **Indicators**








Information Display Warning and Information Messages* .....	102
--	-----

## **Gauges and Displays**

Gauges .....	103
Information Display .....	104




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>What To Do When the indicator Comes On While Driving</b> P. 436</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li> <b>If the Brake System (Red) Indicator Comes On</b> P. 436</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 435</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine did not start*.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system.</li> <li>Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics of the emission control system.</li> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer.</li> </ul> <p> <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 436</p>
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn off the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption.</li> </ul> <p> <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 435</p>
	Transmission Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	<b>M</b> (sequential shift mode) Indicator/Gear Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the sequential shift mode is applied.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Sequential Shift Mode</b> P. 329</p>
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if you have not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular interval.</li> </ul> <p><b>Models with front passenger seat belt reminder</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you fasten your seat belt.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you have fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 39</p> <p><b>Models with front passenger seat belt reminder</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the front passenger has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 39</p>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.












Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 6.0 Litres left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.   <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 344</li> </ul>
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>Side airbag system*</li> <li>Side curtain airbag system*</li> <li>Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Passenger Front Airbag ON/OFF Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off after a system check up.</li> <li>When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds.</li> <li>When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System*</b> P. 52</p>
	High Temperature Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when the engine coolant temperature goes up, and stays on if the temperature continues to rise.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the engine coolant temperature is low, the indicator in red goes off, then comes on in blue.</li> <li>➤ <b>Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)*</b> P. 94</li> <li>• <b>Blinks while driving</b> - Drive slowly to prevent overheating.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and allow the engine to cool.</li> <li>➤ <b>Overheating</b> P. 433</li> </ul>
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


\* Not available on all models







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Door/Boot Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if any door or the boot is not completely closed.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if the boot or any door is opened while driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off when the boot and all doors are closed.</li> </ul>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*</b>  P. 336</li> </ul>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you deactivate VSA.</li> </ul>	 <b>VSA On and Off</b> P. 337
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 437</li> </ul>

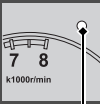


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	<div>Middle Eastern and Southeast Asian models</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON <sup>*1</sup> and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Deflation Warning System Calibration</b> P. 340</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	<div>Taiwanese models</div> <div>Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>, then goes off.</li> <li>May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON <b>II</b> and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>🔧 <b>TPMS Calibration</b> P. 338</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The turn signal indicators blink when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>If you press the hazard warning button, both indicators and all turn signals blink at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.   <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 386, 387, 388</li> </ul>
	High-Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on whenever the light switch is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you remove the key from the ignition switch or set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the rear fog light is on.</li> </ul>	—










Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
<p>Type A</p>  <p>Indicator</p> <p>Type B</p>  <p>Indicator</p>	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 137</p>
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>


\* Not available on all models



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>*1</sup>, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON <sup>*1</sup> again.</li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>
	ECON Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>ECON Button</b> * P. 332
<b>120</b> km/h	Speed Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sound once.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This indicator will stay blinking as long as you drive your vehicle faster than 120 km/h.</li> </ul>
<b>ECO</b>	<b>ECO</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on while the engine is operating in its most economical range.</li> </ul>	—




\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	<b>CRUISE MAIN</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 333
	<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 333
	Maintenance Required Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.</li> </ul>	 <b>Maintenance Reminder*</b> P. 359
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the starting system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>
	Shift to Park Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Light Control Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the light control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>

## Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*

The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
<b>NO KEY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.   <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 147</li> </ul>
<b>KEY</b> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.   <b>Keyless Remote</b>* P. 407</li> </ul>

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

### ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

### ■ Fuel Gauge\*

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

### ■ Tachometer


Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### » Fuel Gauge\*

#### NOTICE


You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

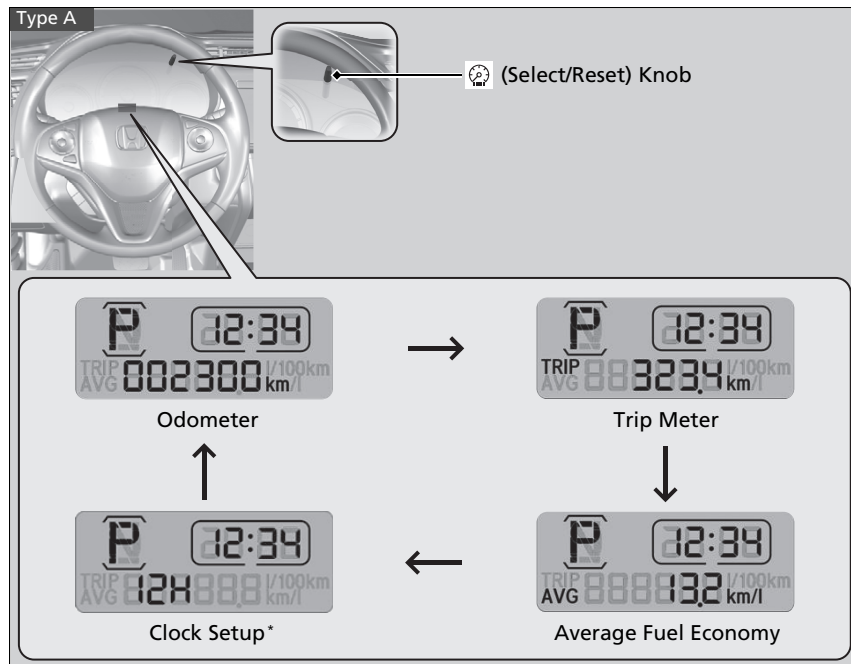
The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

## Information Display

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, and other gauges.

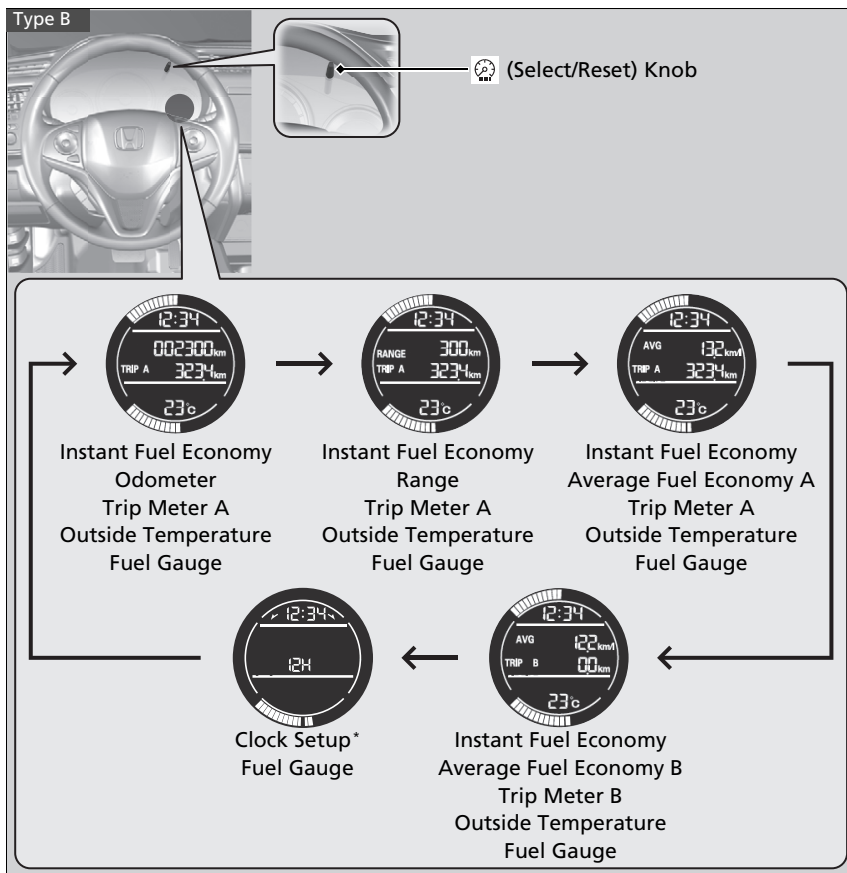
### Switching the Display

Press the  (select/reset) knob to change the display.



### Switching the Display

#### Adjusting the Clock P. 110



\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ■ Fuel Gauge\*

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter


### Type A

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset.

### Type B

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

## ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy\*

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

## » Fuel Gauge\*


### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

## » Trip Meter

### Type B

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the  knob.

## Average Fuel Economy

### Type A

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of the trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When the trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### Type B

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## Range\*


Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

\* Not available on all models






## ■ Outside Temperature\*

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON \*1, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Press and hold the  knob for 10 seconds or more.
  - The following sequence appears for one second each: 0, 1, 2, 3, -3, -2, -1, 0
3. When it reaches the desired value, release the  knob.
  - The new outside temperature is now entered.

## » Outside Temperature\*

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> .....	110
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b> .....	
Key Types and Functions .....	112
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength* .....	114
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	115
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	121
Childproof Door Locks .....	123
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* .....	124
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting* .....	125
<b>Opening and Closing the Boot</b> .....	133
<b>Security System</b> .....	
Immobilizer System .....	136


Security System Alarm .....	137
<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> ....	141
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b> .....	
Ignition Switch* .....	144
ENGINE START/STOP Button* .....	145
Turn Signals .....	149
Light Switches .....	150
Fog Lights* .....	153
Headlight Adjuster* .....	156
Wipers and Washers .....	157
Brightness Control .....	158
Rear Demister Button/Icon .....	159
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	160

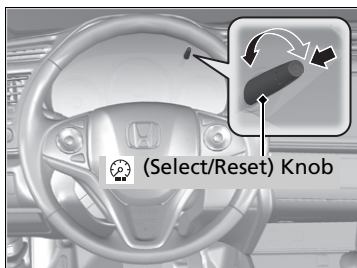
<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b> .....	
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	161
Power Door Mirrors .....	162
<b>Adjusting the Seats</b> .....	
Front Seat .....	164
Rear Seats .....	170
Armrest* .....	171
<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	
Interior Lights .....	172
Interior Convenience Items .....	174
<b>Heating* and Cooling*</b> .....	
Using Vents, Heating* and A/C .....	179
<b>Climate Control System*</b> .....	
Using Automatic Climate Control ....	183
Automatic Climate Control Sensors .....	188

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock





### Models without Display Audio system

You can adjust the time in the clock display, using the  (Select/Reset) knob with the ignition switch in ON \*1.



### Type A



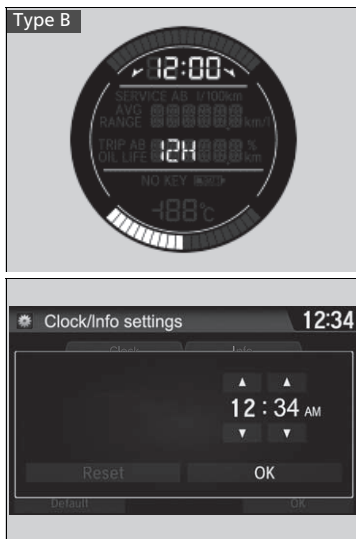
1. Press  repeatedly until the displayed time begins flashing.
2. Press and hold  to change the setting between 12h and 24h, or to turn off the clock.
3. Turn  to adjust the minutes.  
As you increase or decrease the minutes, the hour moves forward or backward.
4. Press  to complete clock adjustment.

### Adjusting the Clock

#### Models with Display Audio system

You cannot adjust the time in the clock display. The clock display automatically changes when you adjust the audio system clock display.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



#### Models with Display Audio system

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select **▲** or **▼** to change hour.
5. Select **▲** or **▼** to change minute, then select **OK**.

#### ▶▶ Adjusting the Clock

##### Models with Display Audio system

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 250

You can turn the clock display on and off.

▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 250

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.

\* Not available on all models

## Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

### Keys

Ignition Key\*



Ignition Key with Remote Transmitter\*  
(with boot release button)



Ignition Key with Remote Transmitter\*  
(with boot release and panic button)



Keyless Remote\*



Keyless Remote\*  
(with panic button)



Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and to open the boot. You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock all the doors and to open the boot.

### Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### Immobilizer System P. 136

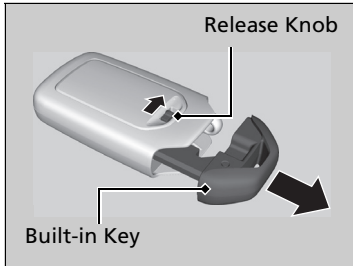
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

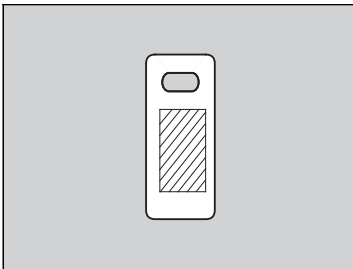
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

### ■ Keyless remote\*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

### ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

### ▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the boot, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors or opening the boot or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

### Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

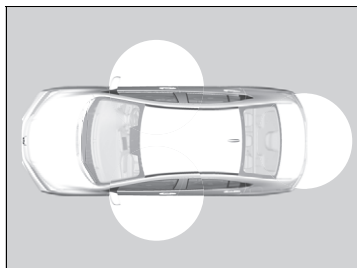
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

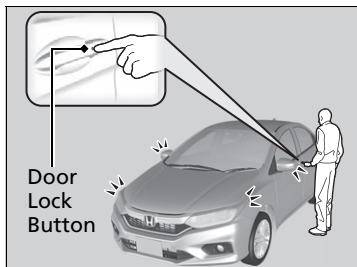
## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System\*



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the boot.

You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle. You can open the boot within about 80 cm radius from the boot release button.



### ■ Locking the doors

#### Except Mexican models

Press the door lock button on the front door.

- Some exterior lights flash three times; the beeper sounds; all the doors and the boot lock; the security system sets.

#### Mexican models

Press the door lock button on the front door.

- Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds; all the doors and the boot lock; the security system sets.

### ► Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you press the unlock button.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The light goes off immediately.

➔ **Interior Lights** P. 172

### ► Using the Keyless Access System\*

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a carwash if the keyless remote is within range.

\* Not available on all models





## ■ Unlocking the doors

### Except Mexican models

Grab the front door handle.

- All the doors and the boot unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once; the beeper sounds.

### Mexican models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- The driver's door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights and indicators flash twice; the beeper sounds.

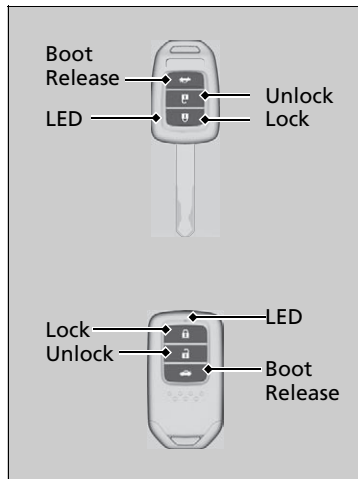
Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- All the doors unlock.
- Some exterior lights and indicators flash twice; the beeper sounds.

### ►► Using the Keyless Access System\*

- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter\*



### ■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

#### Except Mexican models

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors lock and the security system sets.

#### Mexican models

#### Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

#### Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- ▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

## ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter\*

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

#### Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### All models

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

### Except Mexican models

- Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors unlock.

### Mexican models

#### Once:

- Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver door unlocks.

#### Twice:

- The remaining doors unlock.

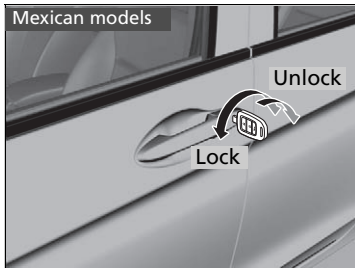
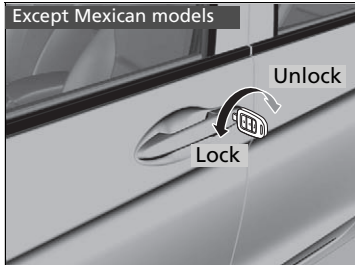
### » Using the Remote Transmitter\*

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low. Replace the button battery as soon as possible when this occurs. If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➤ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 406

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the keyless remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the keyless remote.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

## » Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

### Except Mexican models

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

### Mexican models

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock at the same time.

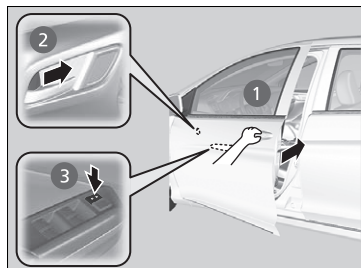
When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

### Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models

Unlocking the door with the key will cause the security system to alarm. Always unlock the door with the remote transmitter.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the remote key on you, or if the battery of the remote key is dead, you can lock the doors without a key.



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

## ■ Lockout prevention system

### Models without keyless access system

The doors cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch, and any door is open.

### Models with keyless access system

The doors cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

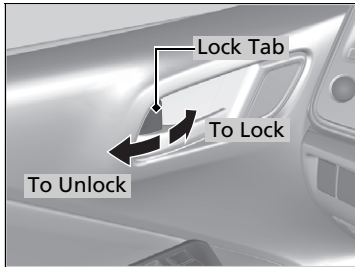
## ► Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### ■ Using the Lock Tab



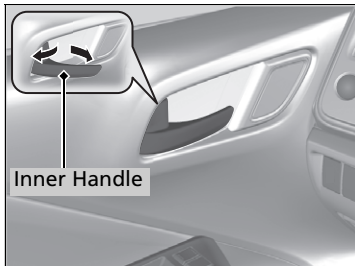
#### ■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

#### ■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



#### Latin American, Chile and Mexican models

Pull the front door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

#### Except Latin American, Chile and Mexican models

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

### ►► Using the Lock Tab

#### Except Mexican models

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

#### Mexican models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door unlocks.

### ►► Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

#### Latin American, Chile and Mexican models

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

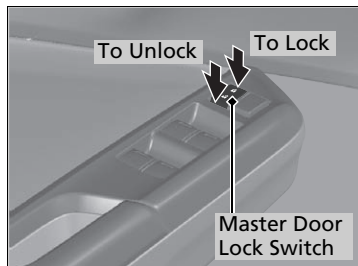
#### Except Latin American, Chile and Mexican models

The driver's door inner handle are designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 123

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch \*



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors.

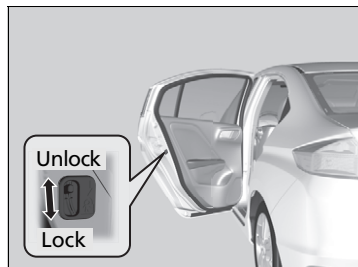
## ►► Using the Master Door Lock Switch \*

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ▣ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.



## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

### ■ Auto Door Locking

#### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

### ■ Auto Door Unlocking

#### Mexican models

#### ■ Driver's door open mode

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

#### Philippine models with auto door locking/unlocking

#### ■ Park unlock mode

All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

### ⌘ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

#### ⌘ Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting\* P. 125

# Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting \*

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

## List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

Mexican models

### ■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

### ■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Driver's Door Open Unlock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.
Models with continuously variable transmission Park Unlock Mode	All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

\*1:Default setting

\* Not available on all models

Philippine models with auto door locking/unlocking

■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.
Park Lock Mode	All doors lock when the shift lever is moved out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Park Unlock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.
Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	All doors unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON <b>II</b> .
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

\*1:Default setting

## Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

### Mexican models

Steps	Drive Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Models with continuously variable transmission Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	
2	Close the driver's door.	Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .	
4	Models with continuously variable transmission Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.	—
5	Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice. <div> </div>	
		Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear one click.

\*1:Default setting

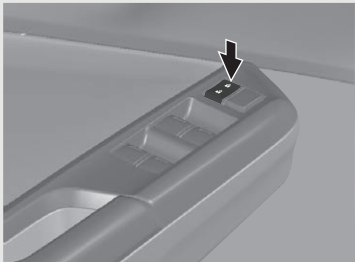
\*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Steps	Drive Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Off
6	Models with continuously variable transmission Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to OFF* <sup>2</sup> within 20 seconds. ► Customization is completed.	

\*1: Default setting

\*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

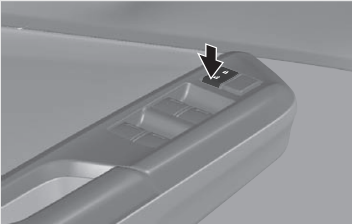
Philippine models with auto door locking/unlocking

Steps	Drive Lock Mode*1	Park Lock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> .		
4	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.	—	—
5	<p>Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice.</p> 		<p>Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear one click.</p>
6	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	—	—
7	<p>Turn the ignition switch to OFF within 20 seconds.</p> <p>► Customization is completed.</p>		

\*1:Default setting

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Mexican models

Steps	Driver's Door Open Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Models with continuously variable transmission Park Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Models with continuously variable transmission Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	Apply the parking brake. Models with continuously variable transmission Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .		
4	Models with continuously variable transmission Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.	—	—
5	Press and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. You will hear a click twice. 		

\*1:Default setting

\*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

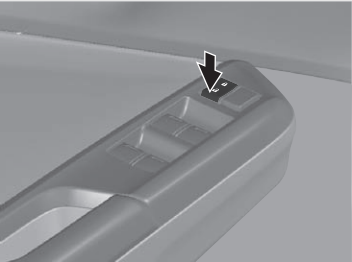
Steps	Driver's Door Open Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Park Unlock Mode	Off
6	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	—	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to OFF* <sup>2</sup> within 20 seconds. ► Customization is completed.		

\*1:Default setting

\*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Philippine models with auto door locking/unlocking

Steps	Park Unlock Mode*1	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .		
2	Close the driver’s door.		Open the driver’s door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> .		
4	—	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.	—
5	Press and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver’s door for more than five seconds. You will hear a click twice. <div>  </div>		
6	—	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to OFF within 20 seconds. <div>▶ Customization is completed.</div>		

\*1:Default setting

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

### ■ Opening the boot

Open the boot all the way.

- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the boot lid may begin to close under its own weight.

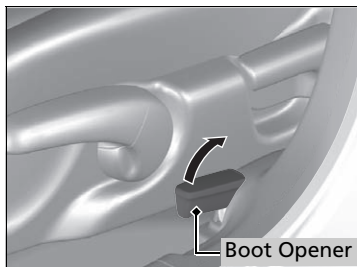
### ■ Closing the boot

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

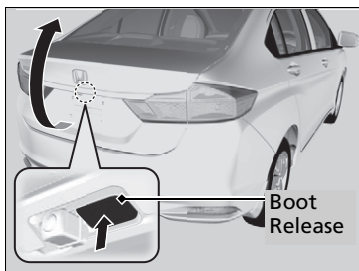
🚫 **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 86

## Using the Boot Opener



Pulling the boot opener on the outside of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the boot.

## Using the Boot Release Button \*



Push up the release on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

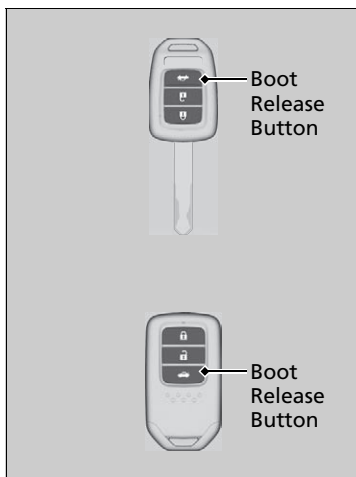
Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote.

- The beeper sounds.

### ►► Using the Boot Release Button \*

- If you forget the remote inside, the beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- A person who is not carrying the keyless remote can unlock the boot if a person who is carrying it is within range.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the boot, move the keyless remote away from the boot and close again.

## Using the Remote Transmitter\*



Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch\* or select the ACCESSORY mode with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch\*<sup>1</sup>.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch\*<sup>1</sup>.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact a dealer.

# Security System Alarm

**Except Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

The security system alarm activates when the doors, boot, or bonnet are opened without the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

**Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

The security system alarm activates when the doors, boot, or bonnet are opened without the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

**■ When the security system alarm activates**

The horn sounds intermittently and the turn signal lights flash.

» Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

**Except Mexican models**

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

**Mexican models**

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

**Except Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*, or ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

**Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*, or ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

## ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup>, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The bonnet and boot are closed.
- All doors are locked with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*.

## ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## » Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

**Except Latin American models**

- Opening the door.

**Latin American models**

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab or the master door lock switch.

**All models**

- Opening the boot with the boot release on the outside of the driver's seat.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

**Except Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**


If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

**Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**


If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

## ■ To cancel the security system alarm

**Except Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key, the remote transmitter, keyless access system\* or the ignition switch is turned to ON <sup>\*1</sup>. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

**Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, keyless access system\*, or the ignition switch is turned to ON <sup>\*1</sup>. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

## » Security System Alarm

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

**Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Vietnamese models**

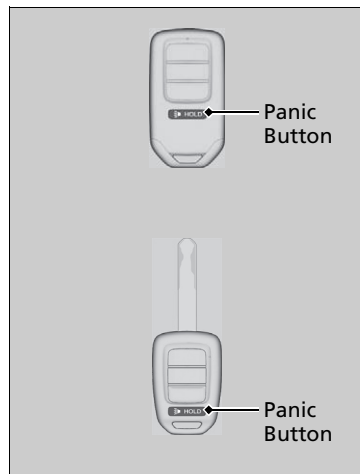
Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Panic Mode\*



### ■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.


### ■ Cancelling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on when children are in the vehicle.

<sup>\*1</sup>: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **WARNING**

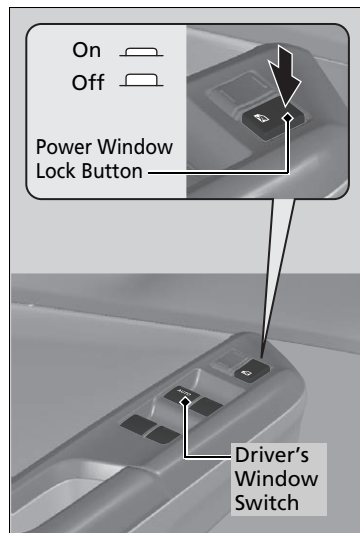
Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

**Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.**

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>\*1</sup>. Opening either front door cancels this function.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



### ■ Automatic operation (Driver's side only)

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

## ► Opening/Closing the Power Windows

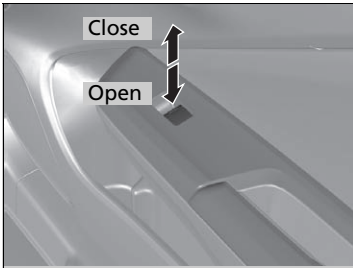
### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function

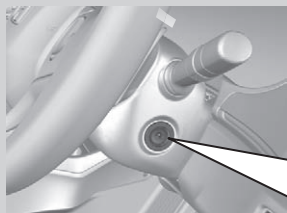


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## Ignition Switch \*



- [0] LOCK:** Insert and remove the key in this position.
- [I] ACCESSORY:** Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.
- [II] ON:** This is the position when driving.
- [III] START:** This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **[II]** when you let go of the key.

### » Ignition Switch \*

#### Manual transmission models

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

#### Continuously variable transmission models

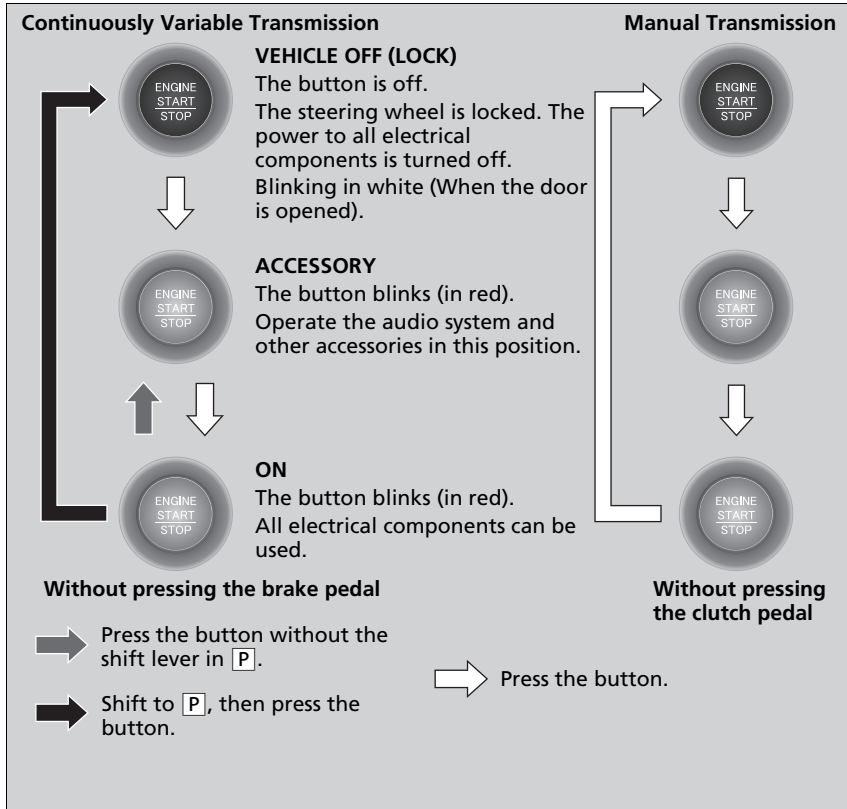
You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **[P]**.

#### All models

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **[0]** or ACCESSORY **[I]**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

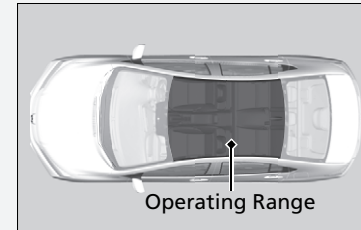
## ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

### ■ Changing the Power Mode



### ⊠ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is red when the engine is running.

If the keyless remote battery is weak, beeper sounds and the **KEY BATT** message appears on the information display.

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **P**\*1 and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

\*1: Continuously variable transmission models only

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/ and outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

## ⌘ Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.









If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started and then turned off, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

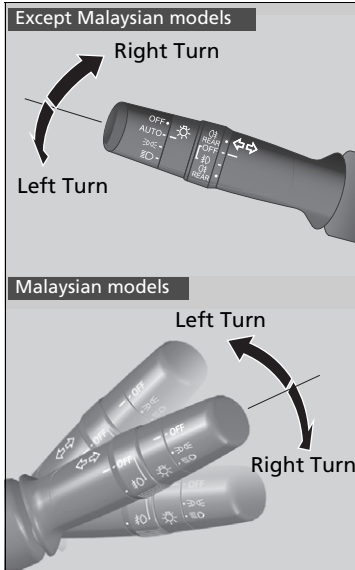
Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.




# Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY (I) 	ON (II) 	START (III) 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li><li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li><li>• No electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off.</li><li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Normal key position while driving.</li><li>• All electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use this position to start the engine.</li><li>• The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.</li></ul>
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON  Button is: Blinking    On	START 
With Keyless Access System and <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> Button	Button-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li><li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li><li>• No electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	Button-Blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off.</li><li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li></ul>	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	Button-On <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.</li></ul>

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

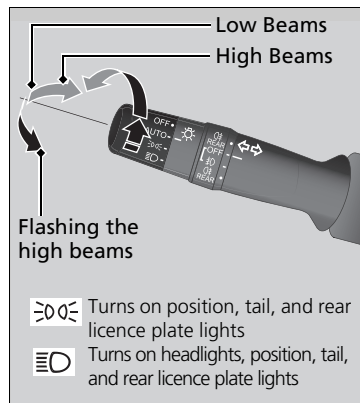
### ■ One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

## Light Switches

### Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch or power mode setting.

#### High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

#### Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

#### Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### Light Switches

#### Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

#### Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the lights on, a light on reminder chime will sound when you open the driver's door.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Indicators** P. 90

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

**Taiwanese models**

**■ Lights off**

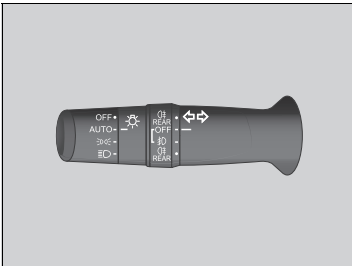
Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The shift lever is moved out of **P** and the parking brake is released.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The shift lever is moved out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

**■ Automatic Lighting Control \***

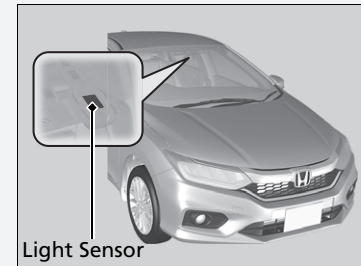


Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

**►► Automatic Lighting Control \***


We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities. The light sensor is in the location shown below.



\* Not available on all models

### ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature \*

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key, and close the driver's door.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK  with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO**\* position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

## Fog Lights\*

### ■ Front fog lights\*

#### Except Taiwanese models

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

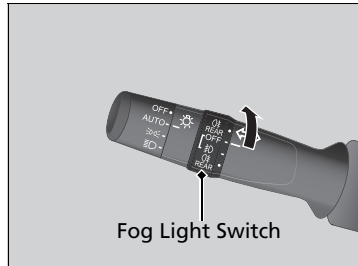
#### Taiwanese models

When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

### ■ Rear fog light\*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

### ■ Front and Rear Fog Lights\*



#### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the 1000 position. The 1000 indicator comes on.

#### ■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

Rotate the switch one position up from the 1000 position. The 1000 and 2000 indicators come on.

#### ■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch down from the **OFF** position. The 2000 indicator comes on.

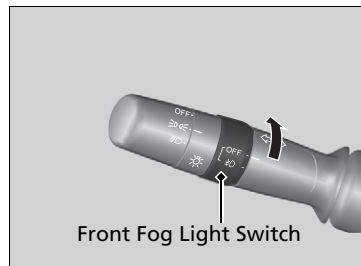
### ► Fog Lights\*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

► **Indicators** P. 90

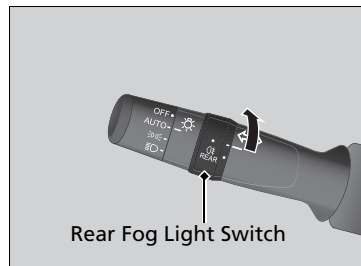
## ■ Front Fog Lights\*



### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch to **D**. The **D** indicator comes on.

## ■ Rear Fog Light\*




### ■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch to **R**. The **R** indicator comes on.



## Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights comes on when the following conditions have been met:

### Except Mexican and Taiwanese models


- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.
- The headlight switch is off.

### Mexican models

- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.
- The headlight switch is off, or in .
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

### Taiwanese models

- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or **OFF**.

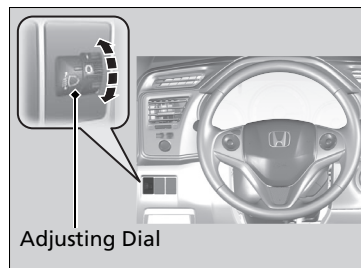
Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Headlight Adjuster\*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

Push the dial to pop it out, then turn it to select a number. Push it again after selecting.

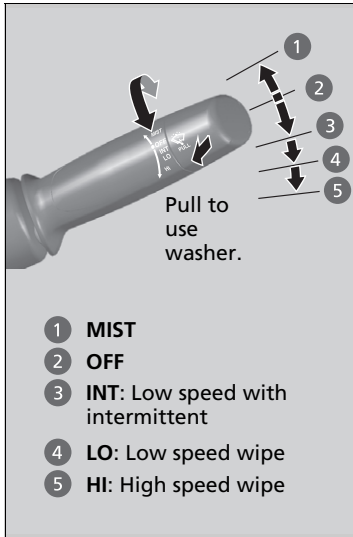
### ■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

## Wipers and Washers

### ■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

#### ■ **MIST**

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ **Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)**

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

#### ■ **Washer**

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### » Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen, becoming stuck. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

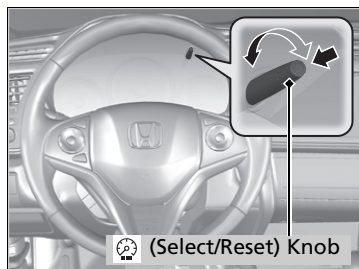
The wiper motor is equipped with a breaker that may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.


If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I**\*1 or LOCK **0**\*1, then remove the obstacle.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Brightness Control



When the position lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON **[I]**<sup>\*1</sup>, you can use the  (Select/Reset) knob to adjust interior panel brightness.

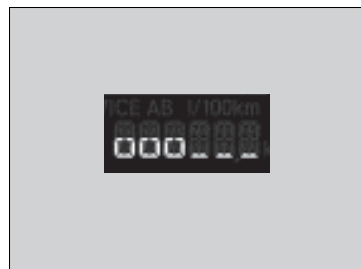
**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The information display will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.

### ■ Brightness level indicator\*

The brightness level is shown on the information display while you are adjusting it.



### » Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

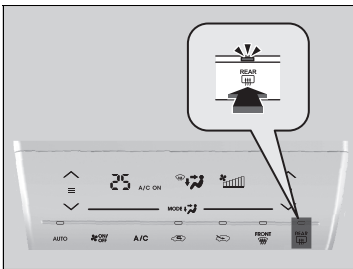
\* Not available on all models

## Rear Demister Button/Icon

Press/Select the rear demister button/icon to defog the rear window when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.



**Models with heating and cooling system**



**Models with climate control system**

The rear demister automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ⌘ Rear Demister Button/Icon

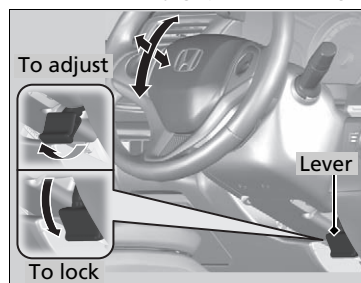
#### NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the demister heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### ► Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

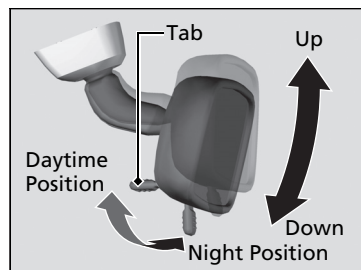
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### ■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions



Flip the tab to switch the position.  
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

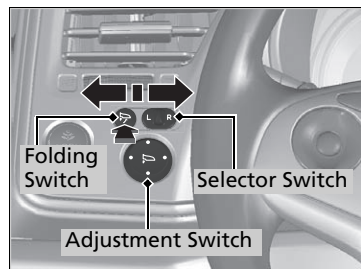
### ▣ Adjusting the Mirrors


Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➤ **Front Seat** P. 164

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON \*<sup>1</sup>.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors\*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function\*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

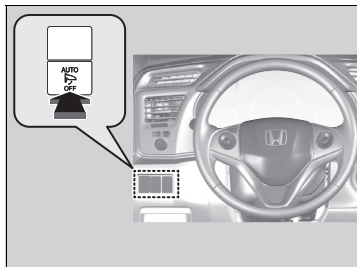
Press the lock button on the keyless remote twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- ▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

Press the door lock button on either front door twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- ▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors



Unlock all doors using the keyless remote.  
Open the driver's door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Grab the door handle on either front door and unlock all doors. Open the driver's door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

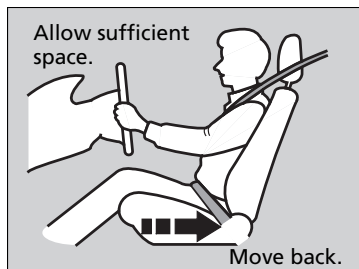
### ▣ Folding out the door mirrors

The door mirrors do not fold out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

\* Not available on all models



## Front Seat



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### Adjusting the Seats

#### **WARNING**

**Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

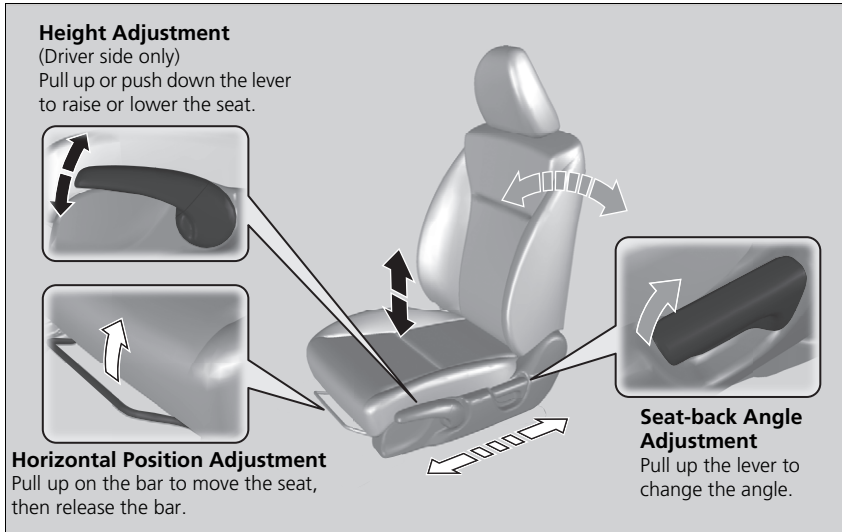
**Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.**

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

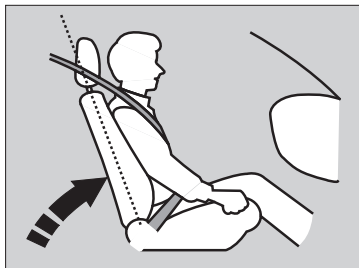
Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions



## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

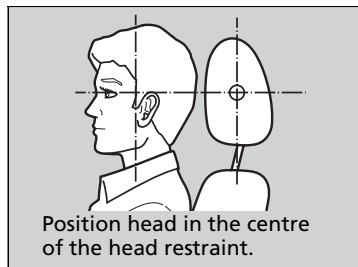
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

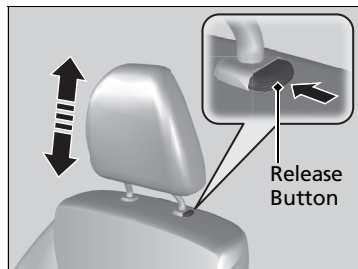
## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in both front seating positions. Rear seat also has head restraints on outer and centre\* seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.  
**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

#### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

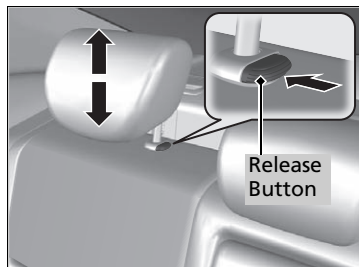
**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

For a head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the outer or centre\* back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

### **To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

### **To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints \*

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### **To remove the head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### **To reinstall the head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

✎ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints \*

## **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

# Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

## ►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

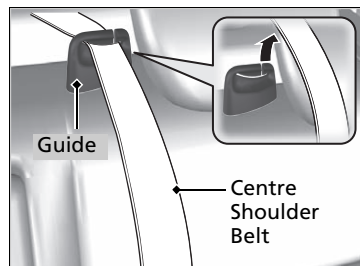
### **WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

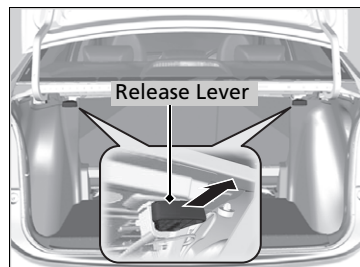
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Rear Seats

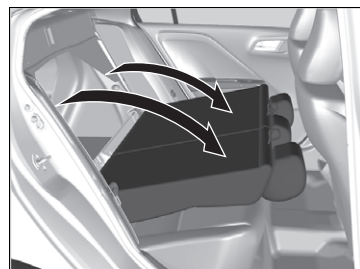
### Folding Down the Rear Seats\*



1. Remove the centre shoulder belt\* from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

If the rear head restraints get caught on the front seat-backs, remove the head restraints.

✘ **Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints\*** P. 168

### ✘ Folding Down the Rear Seats\*

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

✘ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 86

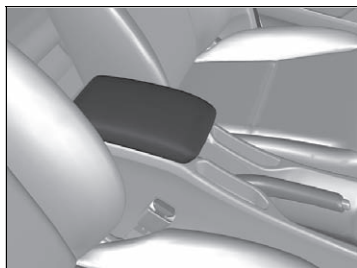
To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt\* is re-positioned in the guide.

**Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

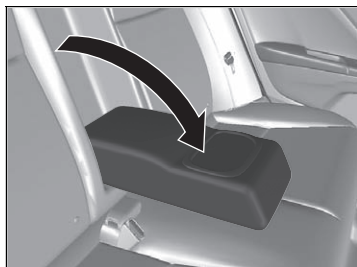
## Armrest\*

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest\*



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest\*



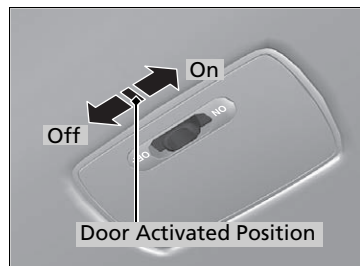
Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

\* Not available on all models



## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switch



#### ■ ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

#### Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switch

In the door activated position, the interior light fades out and goes off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The light goes off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.


#### Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), but do not open a door.

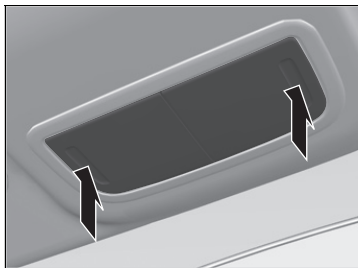
The interior light goes off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch\* or ACCESSORY mode\*.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior light goes off after about 15 minutes.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Map Lights\*

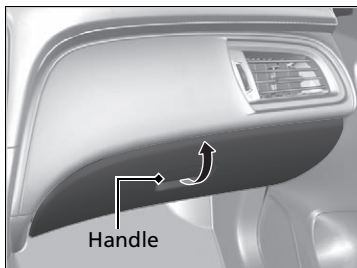


The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

\* Not available on all models

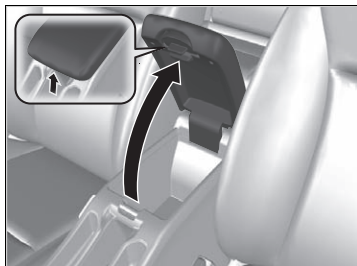
## Interior Convenience Items

### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

### ■ Console Compartment\*



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

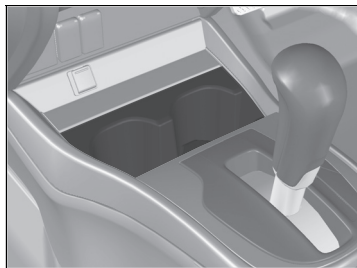
### » Glove Box

#### **⚠ WARNING**

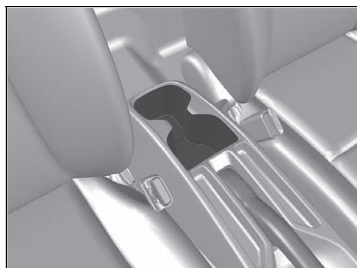
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

## ■ Beverage Holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders (four beverage holders type)\*

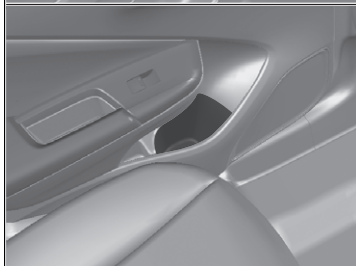
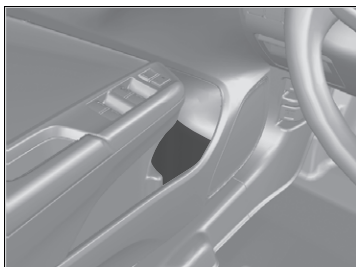
## » Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

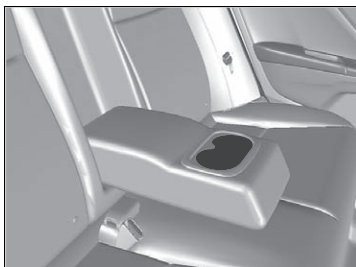
Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

\* Not available on all models



■ **Door pocket beverage holders**

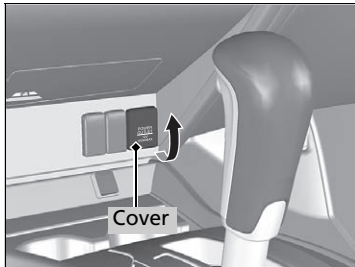


■ **Rear seat beverage holders\***

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

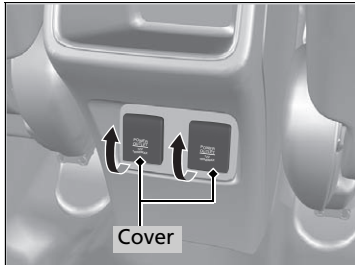
## ■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1.



### ■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.



### ■ Accessory power sockets in the console compartment\*

Open the cover to use it.

## » Accessory Power Sockets

### NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

The power socket can overheat.

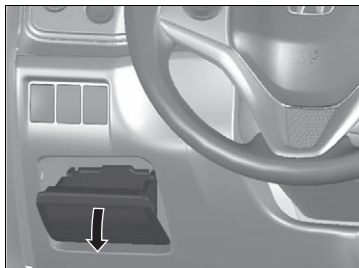
The accessory power sockets are designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine is running.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

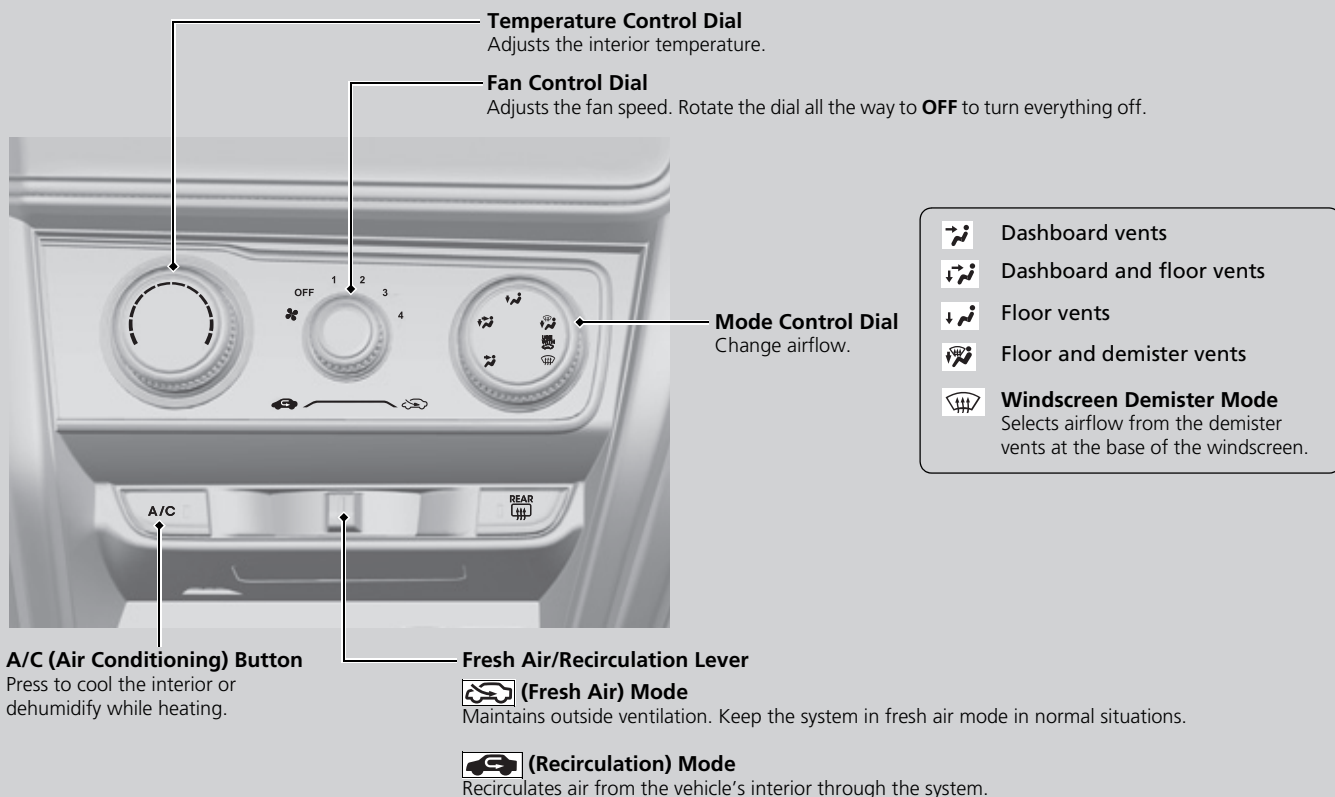
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Driver's Pocket



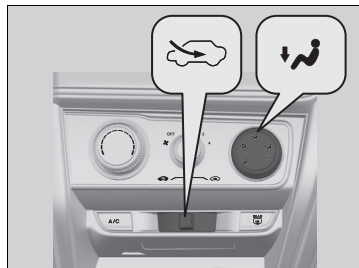
Pull the lid to open the pocket.

## Using Vents, Heating\* and A/C





## ■ Heating\*



The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air.

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Slide the lever to

### ■ To rapidly warm up the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select
3. Set the temperature to maximum warm.
4. Slide the lever to

### ■ To dehumidify the interior

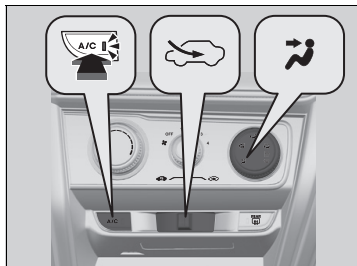
When used in combination with the heater, the air conditioning system makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.



1. Turn the fan on.
2. Press the **A/C** button to turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select
4. Adjust the temperature to your preference.

### ►► To rapidly warm up the interior



Change to fresh air mode as soon as the interior gets warm enough. The windows may fog up if kept in recirculation mode.

## ■ Cooling



1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (the indicator on).
5. Slide the lever to .

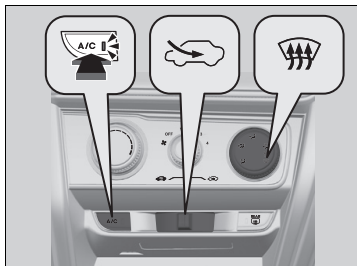
### ■ To rapidly cool down the interior



1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Set the temperature to maximum cool.
4. Press the **A/C** button (the indicator on).
5. Slide the lever to .

### ►► To rapidly cool down the interior



If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

## ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows\*



1. Set the fan to the high speed.
2. Turn the mode control dial to .
3. Slide the lever to .
4. Press the **A/C** button (the indicator on).
5. Adjust the temperature so the airflow feels warm.

### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Turn the mode control dial to .
3. Press the **A/C** button (the indicator on).
4. Slide the lever to .
5. Set the temperature to maximum warm.

## ►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows\*

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

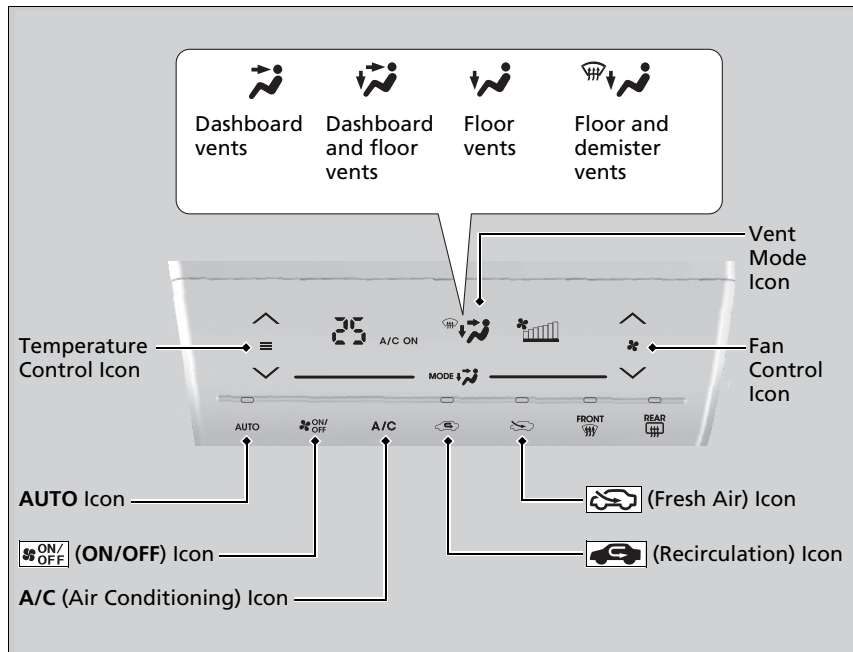
### ►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icon.
3. Select the **ON/OFF** icon to cancel.

\* Not available on all models

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any icons are selected while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icon that was selected will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon that was selected will be controlled automatically.



To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on **AUTO**, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Continued


## ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Select the  (Recirculation) icon or  (Fresh air) icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

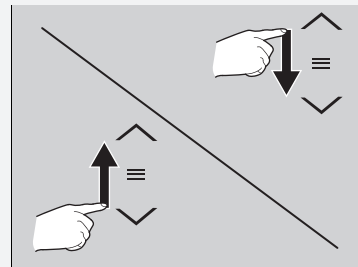
Recirculation mode: Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode: Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## ►► Using Automatic Climate Control

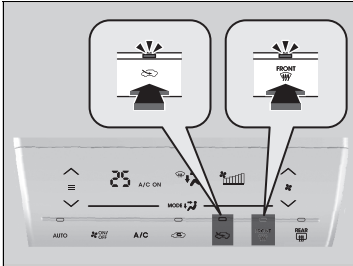
Selecting the  icon switches the climate control system between on and off. The system selects your last selection.

You can raise or lower the temperature or fan speed setting flicking either control icon.




While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

## ■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows\*

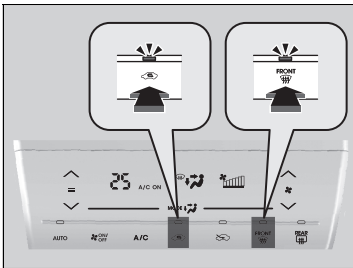


Selecting the  icon turns the air conditioning system on.

**Except Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese models**

The system switch to fresh air mode when you select the  icon.

## ■ To rapidly defrost or defog the windows



1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon.

## ►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows\*

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

## ►► To rapidly defrost or defog the windows

After defrosting or defogging the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

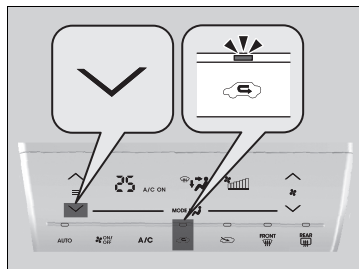
If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Turning the touch screen beep on and off

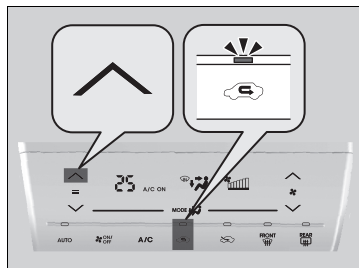
You can select whether to sound a beep every time you operate the climate control using the touch screen.

To turn off the sound:



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. With the selected, tap five times.
3. After -- blinks five times in the temperature display, it changes to **OF**.  
► Release your finger from .

To turn the sound on again:



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. With the selected, tap five times.
3. After **OF** blinks five times in the temperature display, it changes to --.  
► Release your finger from .

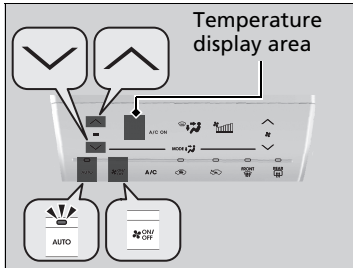
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ►► Turning the touch screen beep on and off

Do not press any other icon while changing the beep setting. If you cannot turn on or off the setting after going through the procedure, turn the ignition switch to LOCK \*1, then go over again.

## ■ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

You can set the level of sensitivity of the touch control panel to high, normal, or low.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON [II]\*1.
2. Press and hold the **AUTO** icon, then press any of the following icons five times to set the level.
  - : High (**Hi**).
    - Previous setting blinks five times and **Hi** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
  - : Normal (--).
    - Previous setting blinks five times and -- will be displayed in the temperature display area.
  - : Low (**Lo**).
    - Previous setting blinks five times and **Lo** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
3. Release the **AUTO** icon.

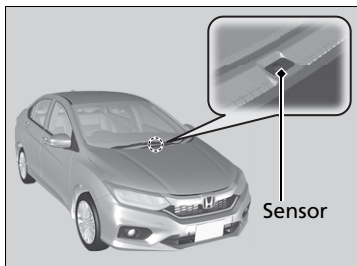
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ▣ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1, then follow this procedure again.

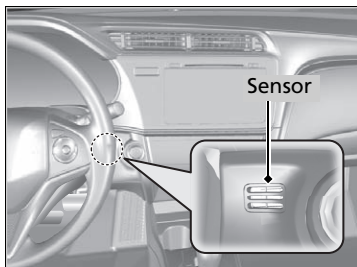


## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



Sensor

The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Sensor

# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

## Audio System\*

About Your Audio System .....	190
USB Port(s) .....	191
HDMI™ Port* .....	192
Auxiliary Input Jack* .....	193
Audio System Theft Protection* .....	194
Audio Antenna* .....	194
Audio Remote Controls* .....	195

### Models with monochrome audio system

<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	197
---	-----

### Models with Display Audio system

<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	216
---	-----

## Audio Error Messages

CD Player .....	243
iPod/USB Flash Drive .....	244

## General Information on the Audio System

Recommended CDs .....	246
Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives .....	248

### Models with Display Audio system

<b>Customized Features*</b> .....	250
-----------------------------------	-----

### Models with monochrome audio system

#### Hands-Free Telephone System\*/ Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®\*

Using HFT/HFL .....	262
HFT/HFL Menus .....	264

### Models with Display Audio system

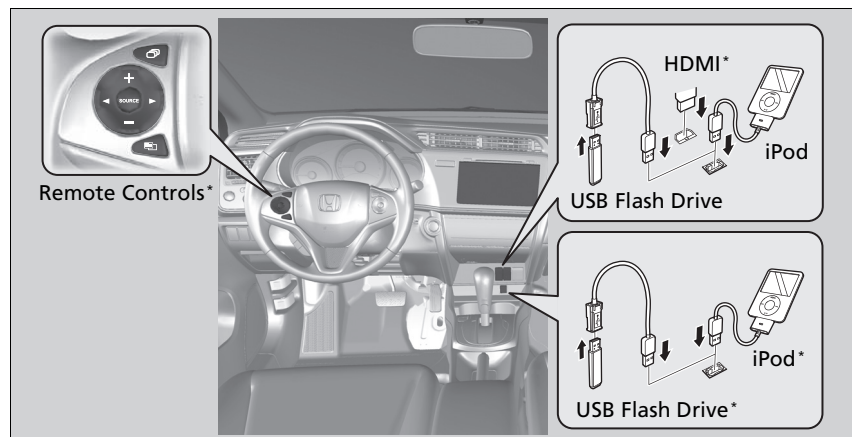
#### Hands-Free Telephone System\*/ Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®\*

Using HFT/HFL .....	285
HFT/HFL Menus .....	288

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*®, and HDMI™\* devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls\* on the steering wheel, or icons on the touch screen interface\*.

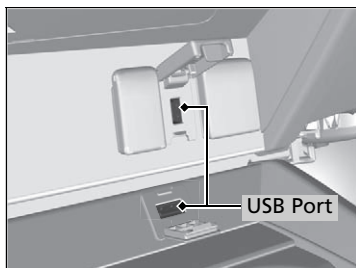


### About Your Audio System

Video CDs, DVDs, and 8-cm mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

## USB Port(s)



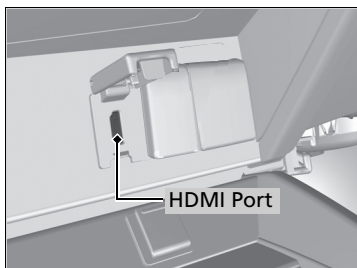
1. Open the cover.
2. Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

### ⌘ USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

## HDMI™ Port\*



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

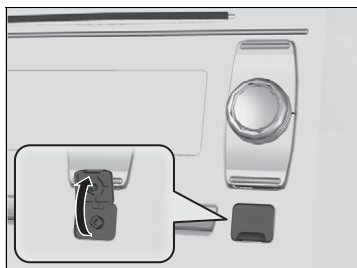
### ⌘ HDMI™ Port\*

- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

## Auxiliary Input Jack\*

Use the jack to connect a standard audio device.



1. Open the cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.

### ▶▶ Auxiliary Input Jack\*

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to the AUX mode by pressing the **CD/AUX** button.


You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.

\* Not available on all models

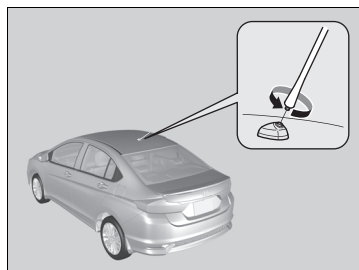
## Audio System Theft Protection \*

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
  - The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

## Audio Antenna \*



Your vehicle is equipped with a removable antenna at the rear of the roof.

### ►► Audio Antenna \*

#### NOTICE

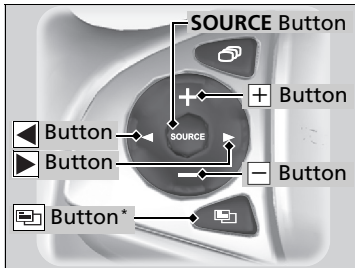
Before using a "drive-through" car wash, remove the antenna by unscrewing it by hand. This prevents the antenna from being damaged by the car wash brushes.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Audio Remote Controls\*

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



### SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

#### Models with monochrome audio system

FM1→FM2→AM→CD→USB/iPod→  
*Bluetooth*® Audio→AUX

#### Models with Display Audio system

FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→ Apps→  
*Bluetooth*® Audio→AUX HDMI™

### + - (Volume) Buttons

**Press** +: To increase the volume.

**Press** -: To decrease the volume.

### ◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  - Press** ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press** ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold** ▶: To select the next strong station.
  - Press and hold** ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - Press** ▶: To skip to the next song.
  - Press** ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD (MP3/WMA/AAC), USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio\*
  - Press and hold** ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold** ◀: To go back to the previous folder.

### ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls\*






Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.




#### Models with Display Audio system

##### Button

- When listening to the radio  
**Press** : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Save preset**, or **Seek**.
- When listening to a CD or USB flash drive  
**Press** : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Repeat**, or **Random**.
- When listening to an iPod  
**Press** : To display the menu items. You can select **Repeat** or **Shuffle**.
- When listening to a *Bluetooth®* Audio  
**Press** : To display the menu items. You can select **PAUSE** or **Play**.
- When watching a video  
**Press** : To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Repeat**, **Random**, or **Play/Pause**.



#### ►► Audio Remote Controls\*

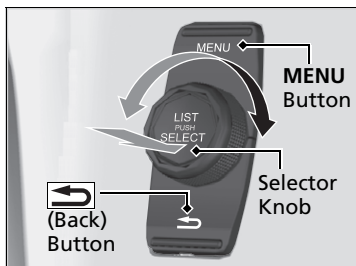
##### Models with Display Audio system

The  button is operable only when the audio mode is FM, AM, CD, USB, iPod, or *Bluetooth®* Audio.


# Audio System Basic Operation

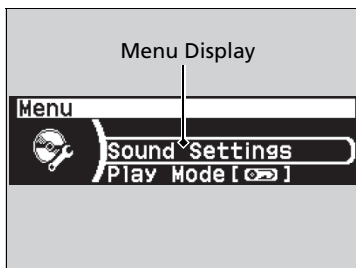
## Models with monochrome audio system


To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1.




Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.

Press  to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.



**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press  to set your selection.

**MENU button:** Press to select any mode. The available mode includes the auto select, save preset, sound settings, *Bluetooth*® setup, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from scan, random, repeat, and so on.

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.





Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

### Audio Menu Items

- **Sound Settings** P. 198
- **Play Mode** P. 205, 209, 212
- **Scan** P. 202
- **Auto Select** P. 201
- **Save Preset** P. 201
- **Resume/Pause** P. 215

## Models with audio remote control buttons

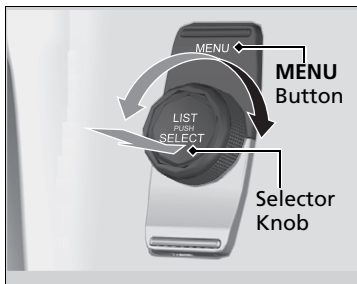
Press the **SOURCE**, , ,  or  button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

- **Audio Remote Controls\*** P. 195

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

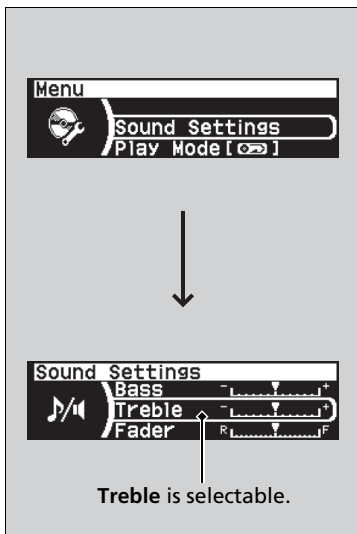
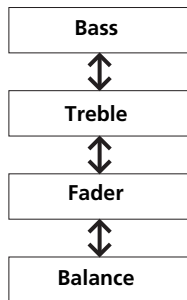
\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Sound



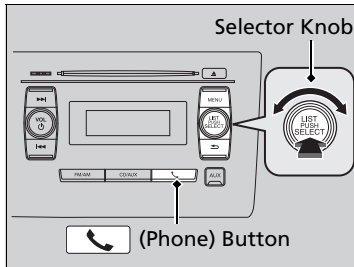
1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Sound Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select the mode, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



## System Language\*

You can change the display language on the phone mode.



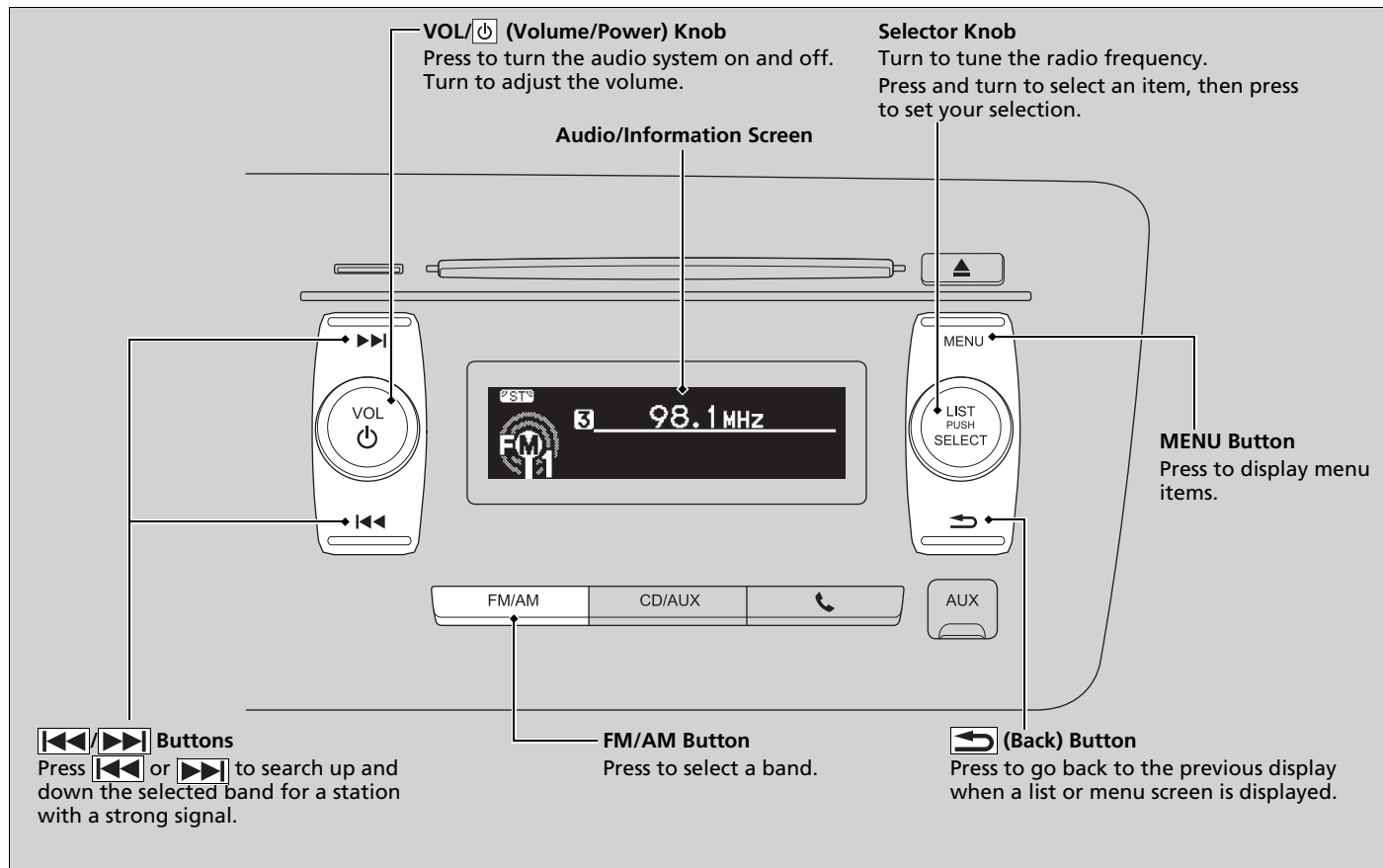
1. Press the (Phone) button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Language**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the language, then press .

### System Language\*

You can change the display language to English, Spanish or Portuguese.



\* Not available on all models



## Playing AM/FM Radio



## Auto Select





Uses the auto select feature to scan both bands and store the strongest station in each preset.

1. Press the **FM/AM** button to switch to a mode.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Auto Select**, then press .  
▶ The system goes into scan mode for several seconds.




To turn off auto select, press the **MENU** button and rotate  to select **Auto Select**, then press .

## Preset Memory

Uses the preset memory feature to store a station in each preset.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Save Preset**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store the station, then press .

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press  to switch to the preset list mode.
3. Rotate  to select a preset number, then press and hold .

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The selected radio frequency is shown on the centre display.

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.  
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Auto Select function scans and stores up to 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations with a strong signal into preset the preset button memory.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can manually store your preferred frequencies.

### Models with audio remote control buttons




Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls**\* P. 195


## ■ Preset List


Lists the preset stations on the selected band.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press  to switch to the preset list mode.
3. Rotate  to select the preset station, then press .

## ■ Scan

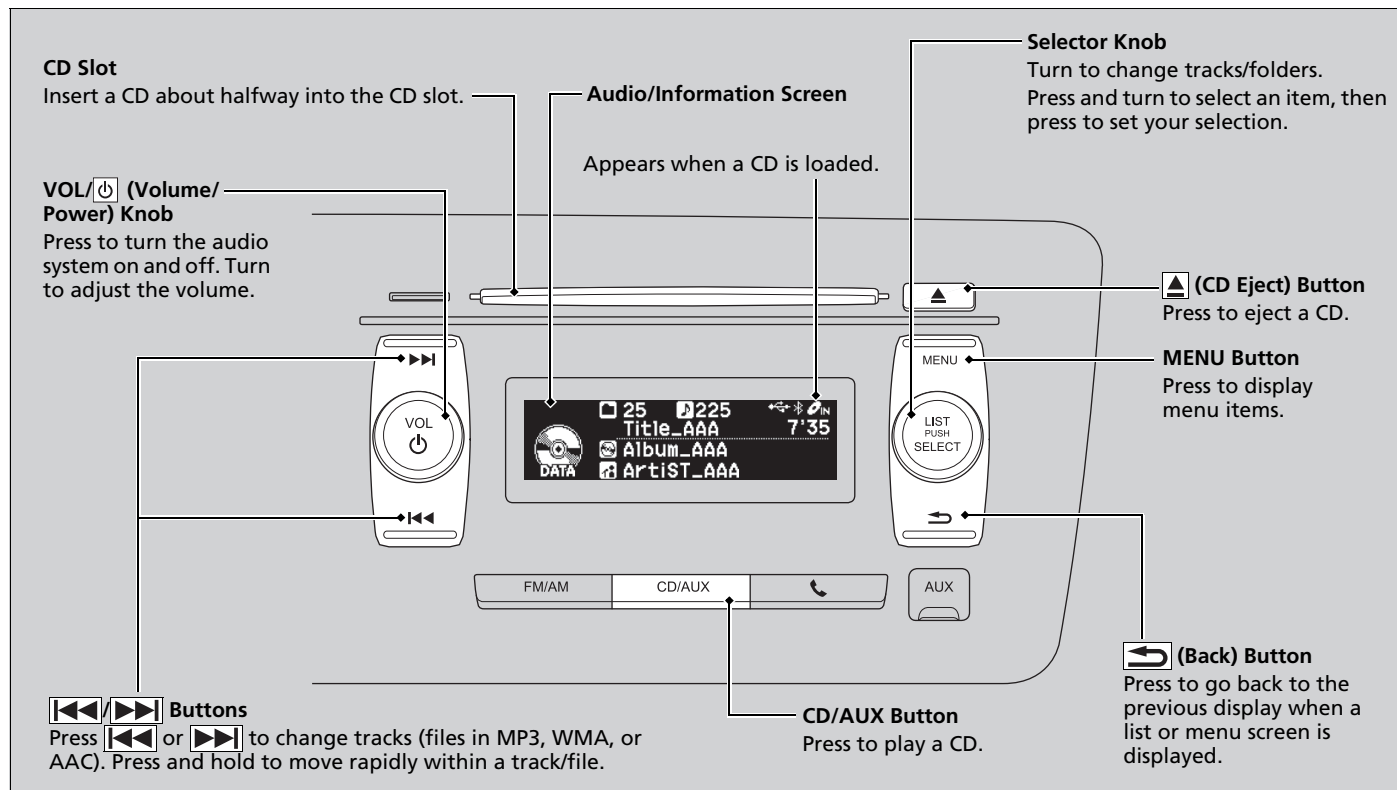
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **FM/AM** button to switch to a mode.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## Playing a CD

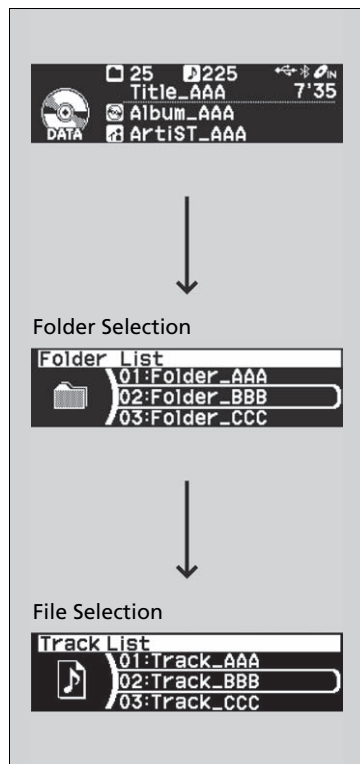
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD/AUX** button.








\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.



## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press  to display a folder list.
2. Rotate  to select a folder.
3. Press  to display a list of files in the folder.
4. Rotate  to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

AAC or WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

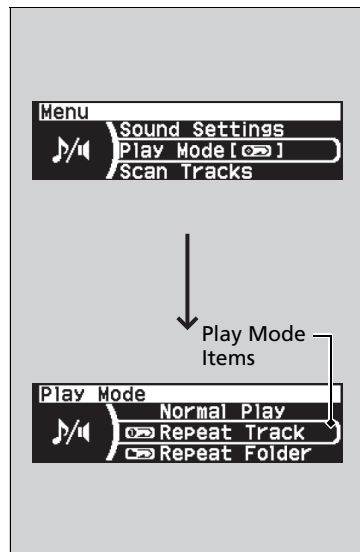
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Normal Play

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

## To turn off a play mode

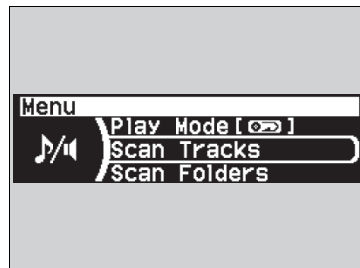
1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## ■ Scan

You can select scan modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan Tracks** or **Scan Folders**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## ▶▶ Scan

Scan Mode Menu Items

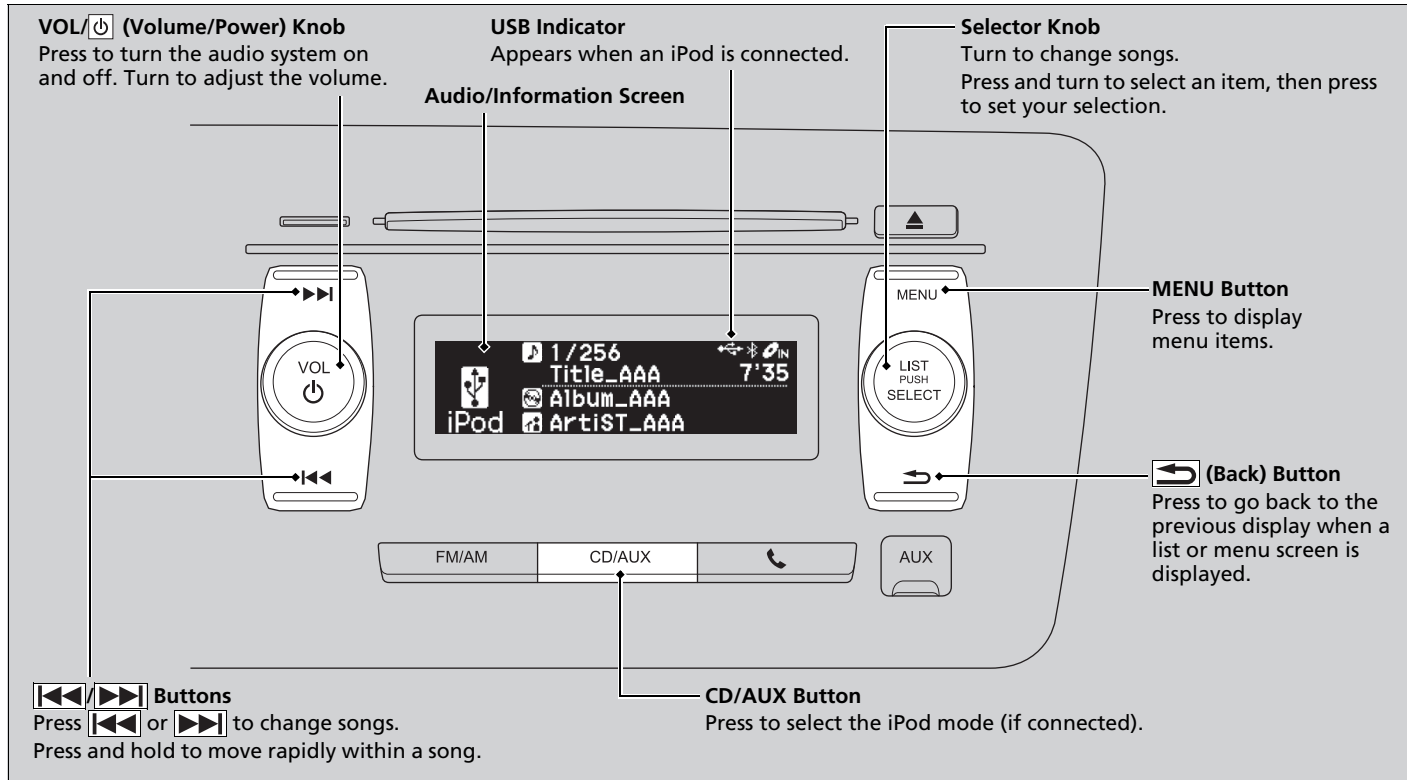
**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

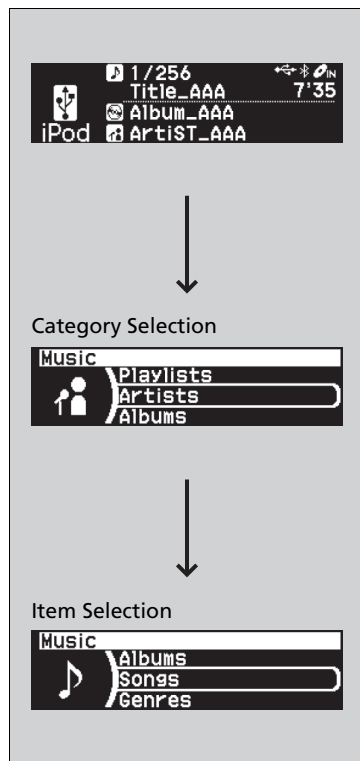
## Playing an iPod

Using your lightning connector, connect the iPod to a USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

📖 **USB Port(s)** P. 191



## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display an iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .  
▶ Repeat this procedure until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

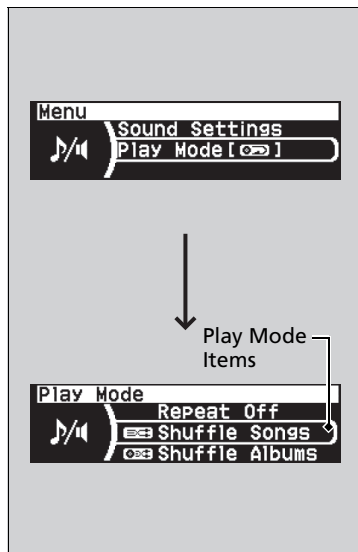
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 244

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Normal Play

**Shuffle Off:** Turns off the shuffle mode.

**Shuffle Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Repeat Off:** Turns off the repeat mode.

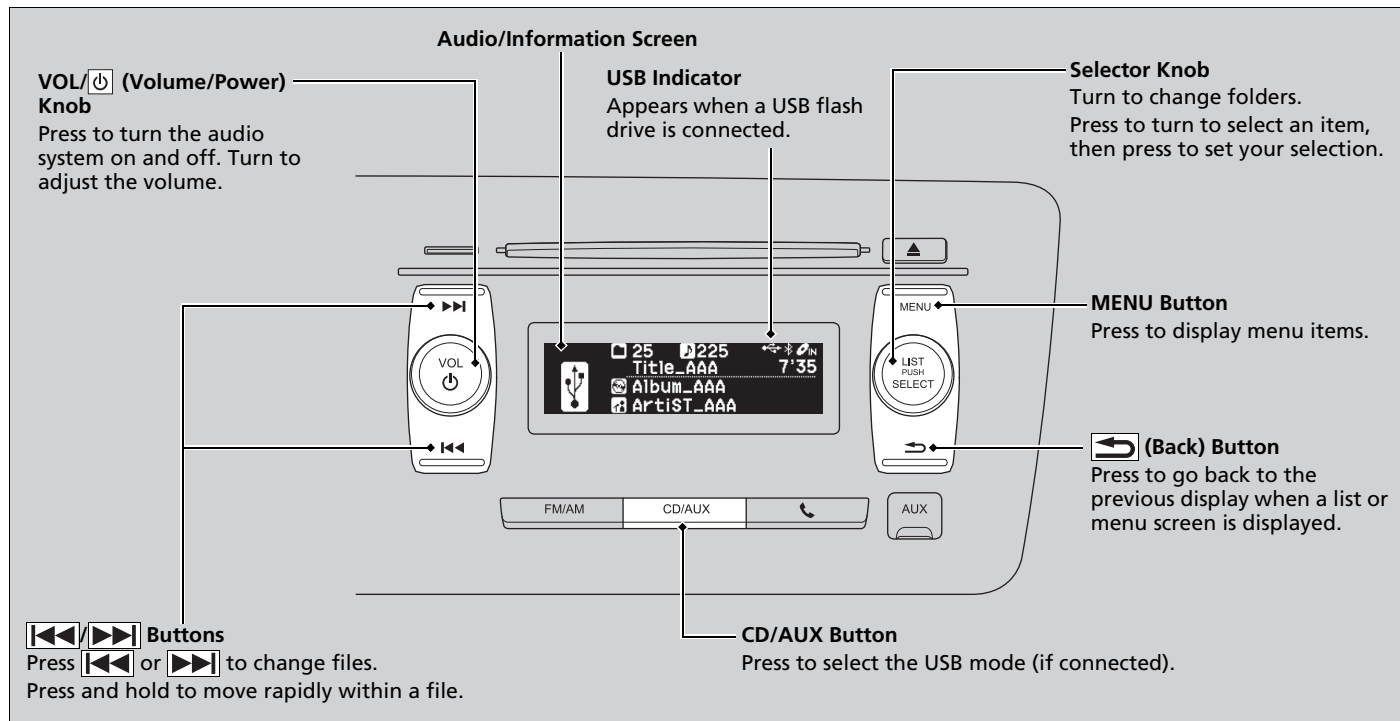
**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current song.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format.

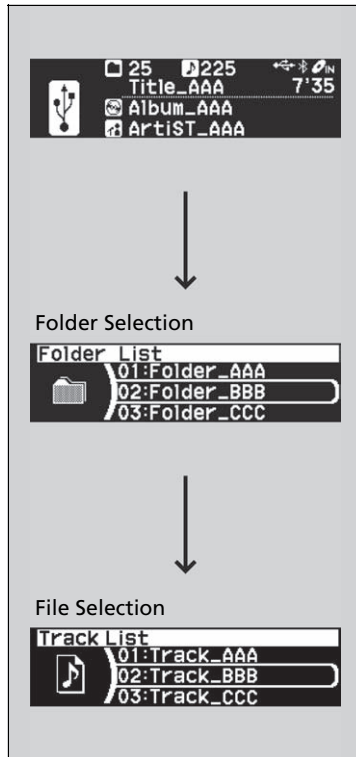
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 191



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from the Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display a list of files in the folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

### ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use a recommended USB flash drive.

#### ▶ General Information on the Audio System

P. 246

AAC or WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

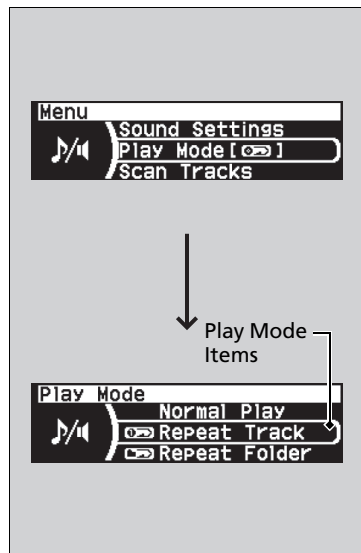
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 244





## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.



2. Rotate  to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate  to select a mode, then press .

## ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.

2. Rotate  to select **Play Mode**, then press .

3. Rotate  to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Normal Play

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

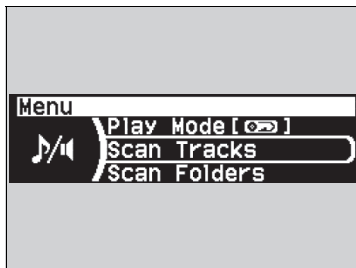
**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All:** Plays all files in random order.

## Scan

You can select scan modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan Tracks** or **Scan Folders**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## Scan

Scan Mode Menu Items

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the folder.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System/*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL).

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 268

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

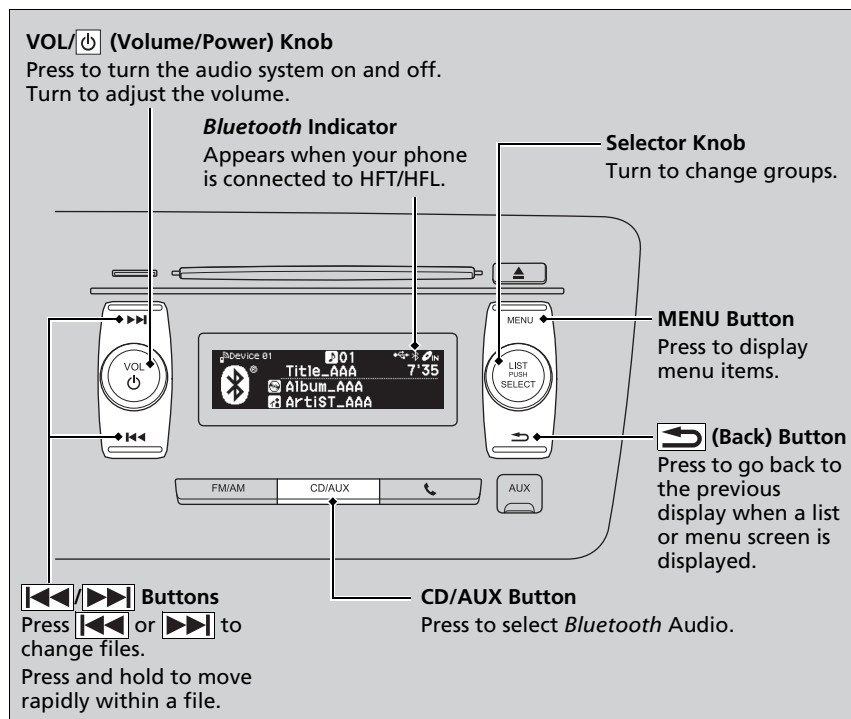
Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

In some countries, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

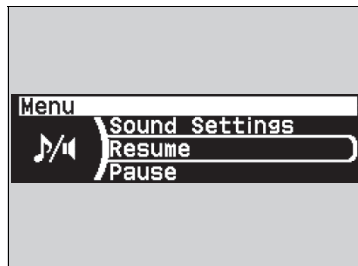
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT/HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.



## ■ How to Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** button.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT/HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Resume** or **Pause**, then press .

## ▶▶ How to Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

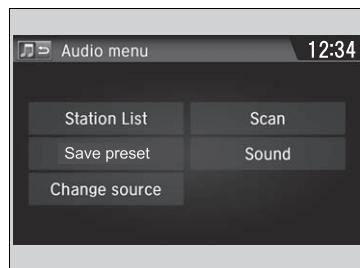
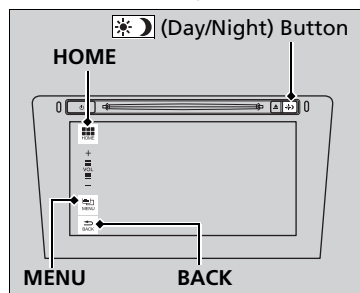
The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack, you may need to press the **CD/AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## Models with Display Audio system

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



**HOME:** Select to go to the home screen.

➤ **Switching the Display** P. 217

**MENU:** Touch to select any mode.

The available mode includes **Change source**, **Station List**, **Save preset**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

**BACK:** Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

☀️🌙 **(Day/Night) button:**

Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press the ☀️🌙 button once and select ☐ or ☐ to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press the ☀️🌙 button, the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

## Audio System Basic Operation

### Audio Menu Items

➤ **Station List** P. 225

➤ **How to Select a File from the Music Search List** P. 228, 234

➤ **Scan** P. 226


➤ **How to Select a Play Mode** P. 229, 232, 235

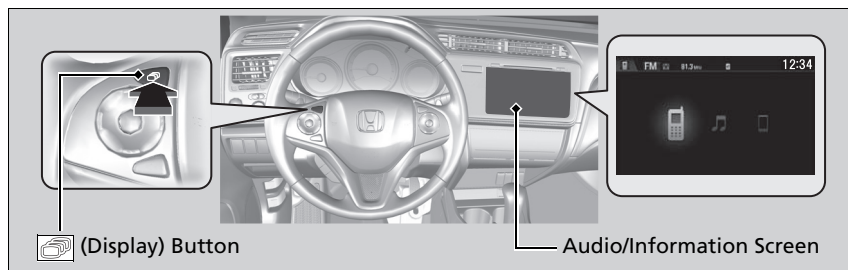
## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display

#### Using the (display) button

Press the  (display) button to change the display.



## ■ From the audio/information screen



Select **HOME**.

Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio** or **Settings**.

### ■ Phone

Shows the HFT/HFL information.

➡ **Hands-Free Telephone System\*/Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®** P. 285

### ■ Info

Shows the **Trip Computer**, **Clock/wallpaper**, or **System/Device information**.

### ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

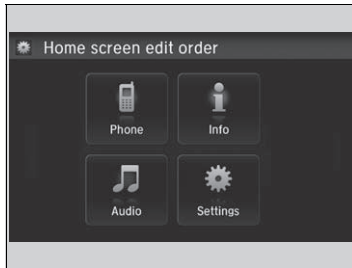
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

🔧 **Customized Features**\* P. 250

## ■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Home** tab.
5. Select **Home screen edit order**.
6. Select and hold the icon then, drag it to the desired position.

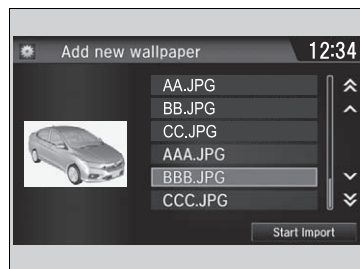
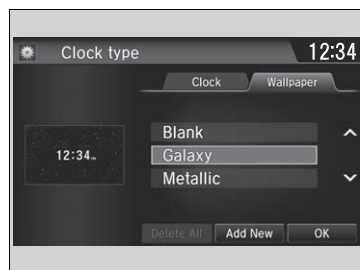


## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

■ **USB Port(s)** P. 191

2. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.

3. Select **Clock/Info**.

4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.

5. Select **Add New**.

▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.

6. Select a desired picture.

▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.

7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.

▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

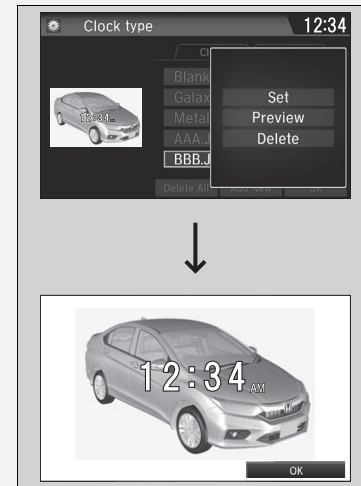
1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **MENU**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.

### ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

#### Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or **BACK**.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select a tab from the following choices:  
**Bass, Treble, Fader, Balance, Speed  
 Volume Compensation (SVC)**

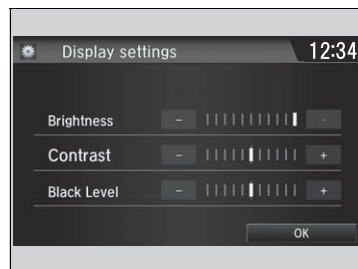
### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid, and High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

# Display Setup

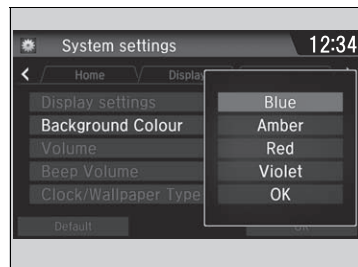
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

## ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select the **Display** tab.
4. Select **Display settings**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **OK**.

## ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

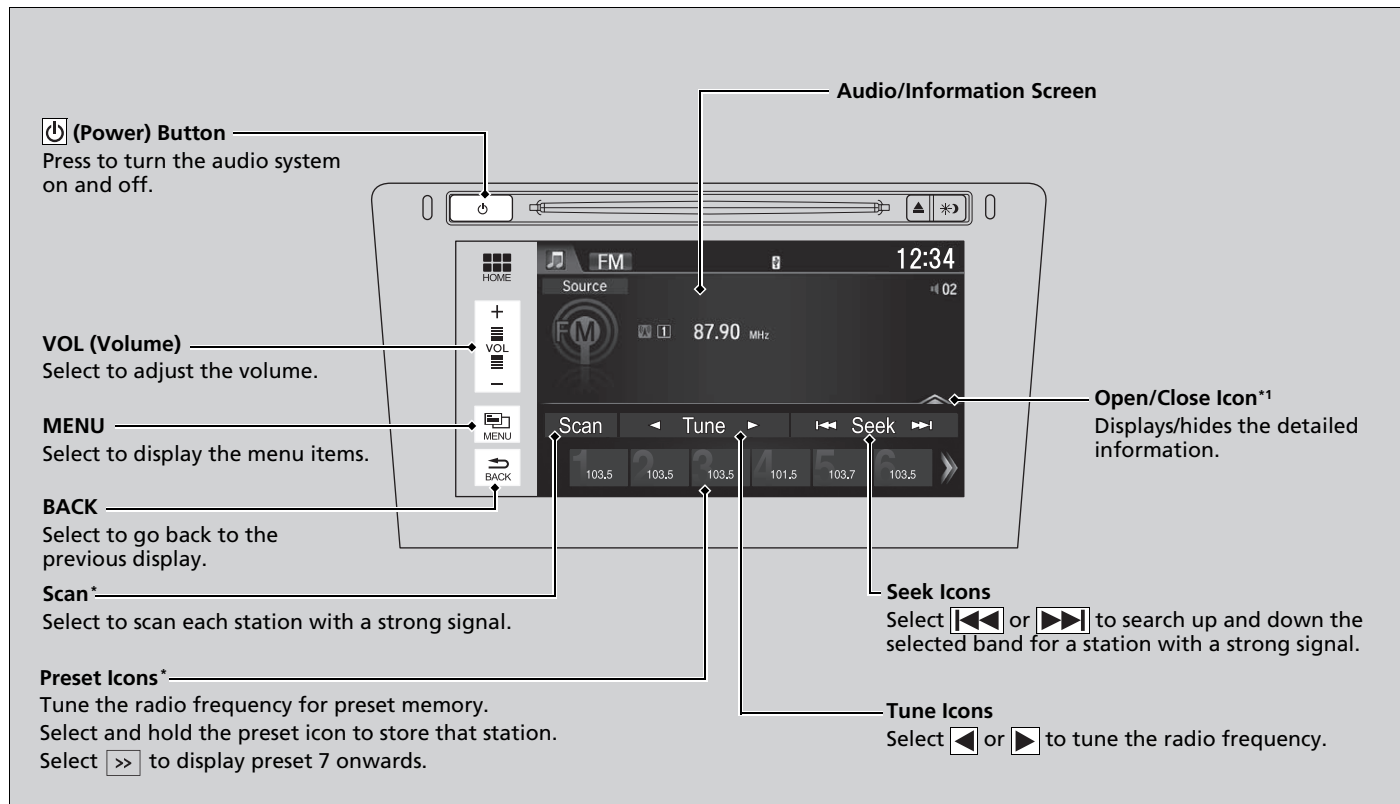


1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select the **Display** tab.
4. Select **Background Colour**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **OK**.

## ▶▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## Playing AM/FM Radio



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
2. Select the **Preset** tab.
3. Press and hold the preset number for the station you want to store until you hear a beep.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **MENU** to switch to the **Audio menu** screen.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **MENU** to switch to the **Audio menu** screen.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **Source**.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls**\* P. 195

You can also switch the mode by selecting **Change source** on the **Audio menu** screen.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

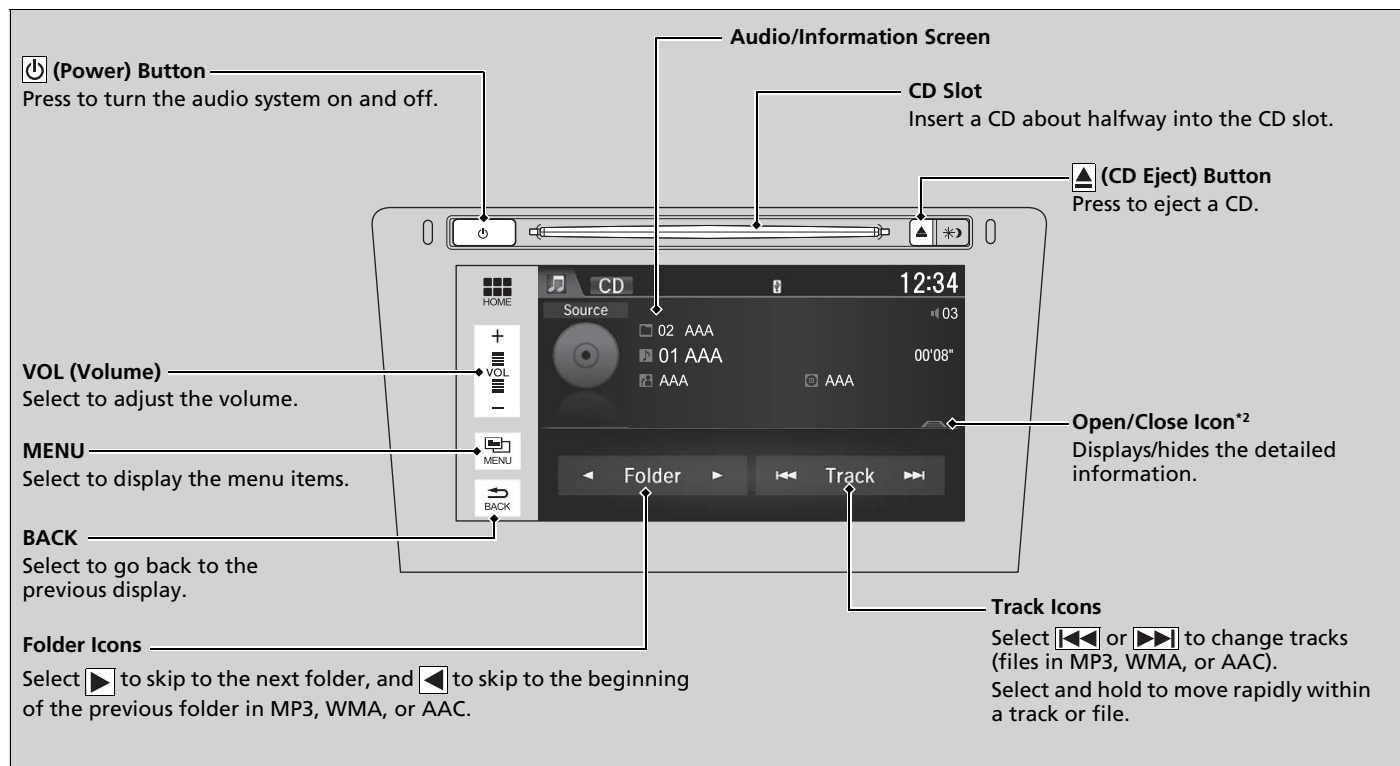
**1.** Select **MENU**.

**2.** Select **Scan**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel**.

## Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.

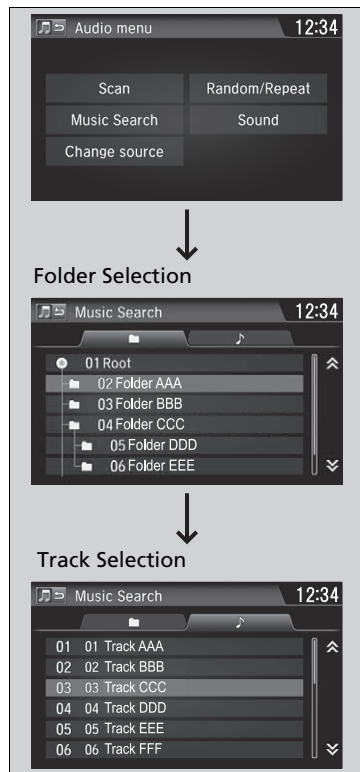


\*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.



## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

## To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

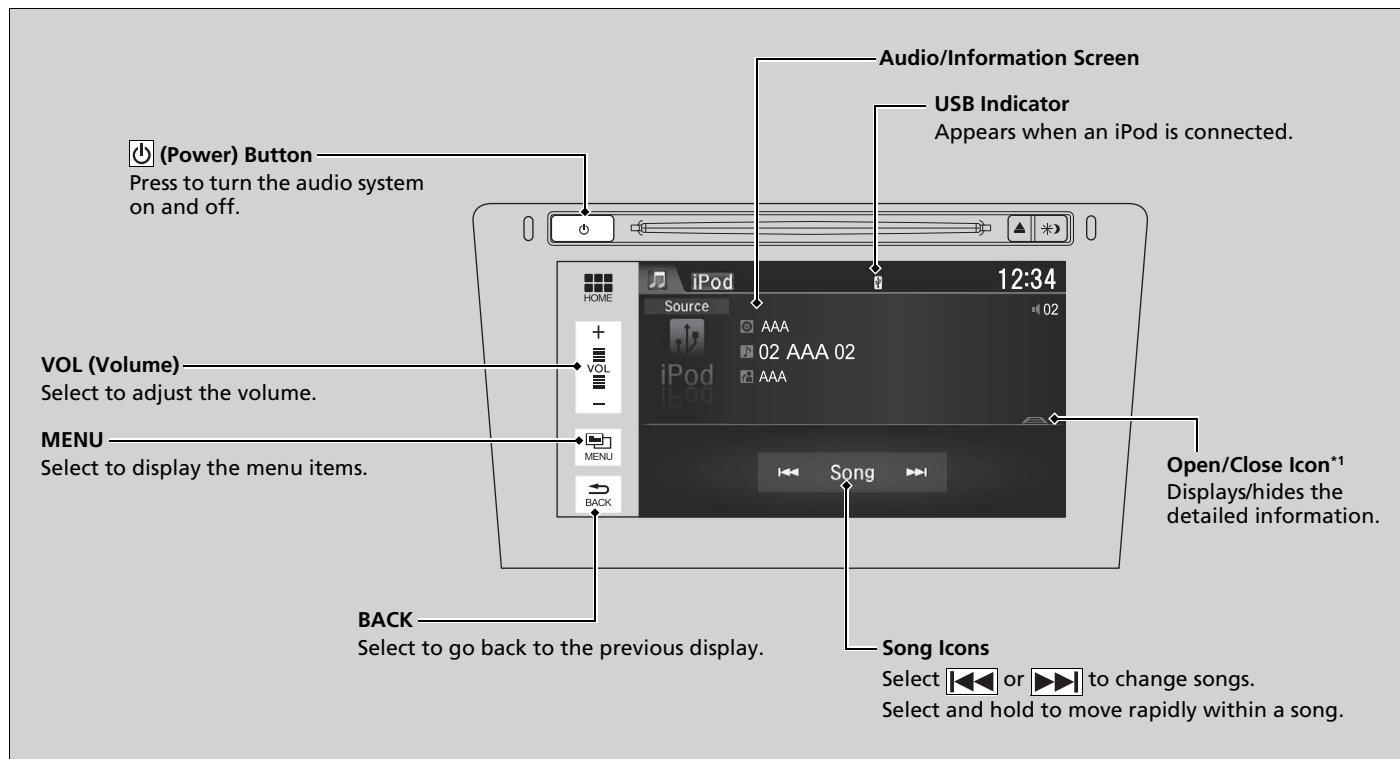
**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

## Playing an iPod

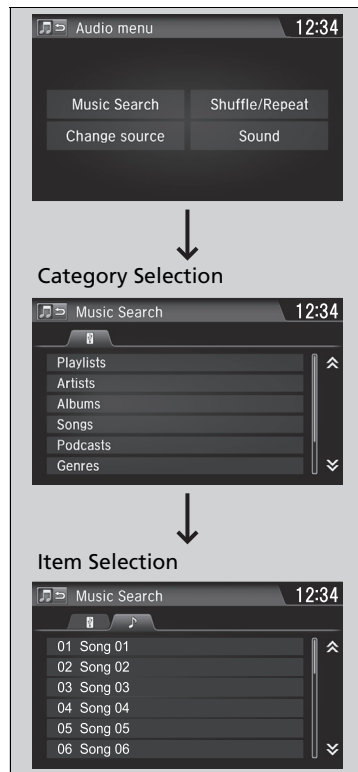
Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 191



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

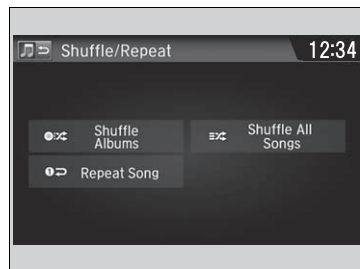
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 244

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Shuffle/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ►► How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

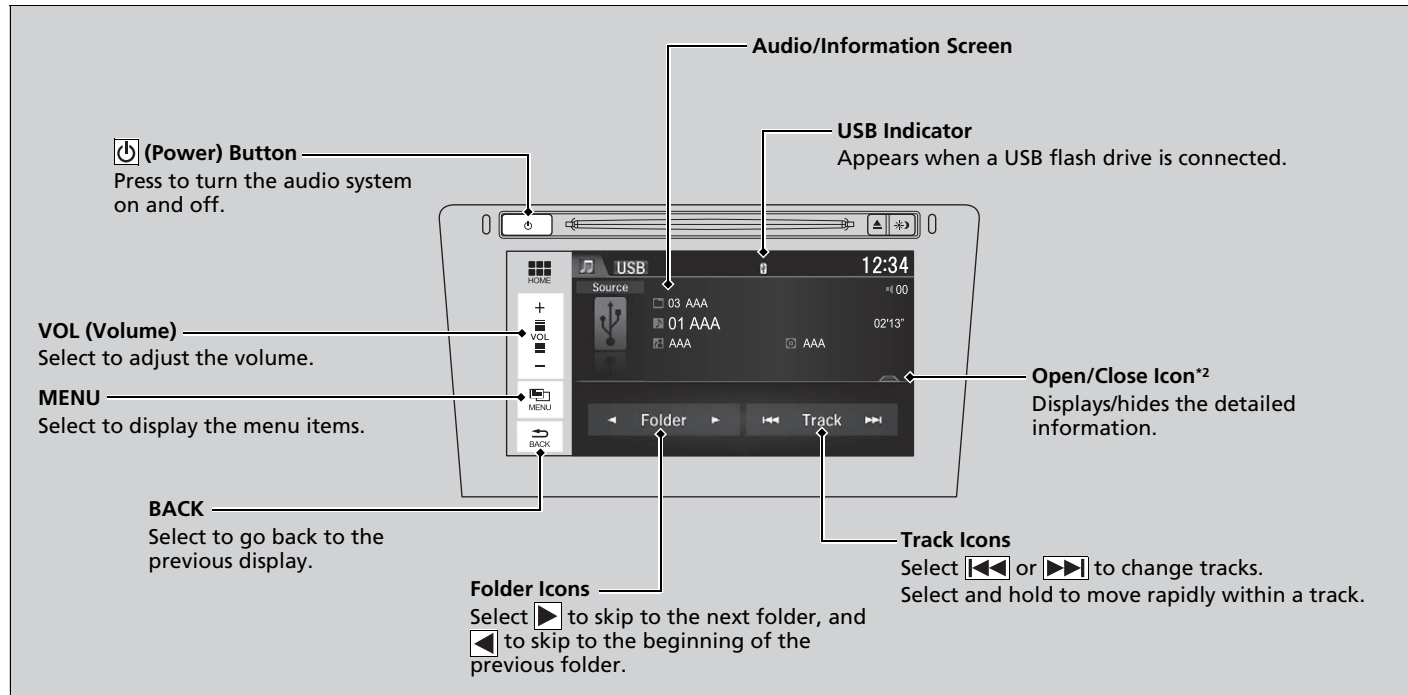
**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current track.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays audio and video\* files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC\*<sup>1</sup>, or MP4\* format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 191

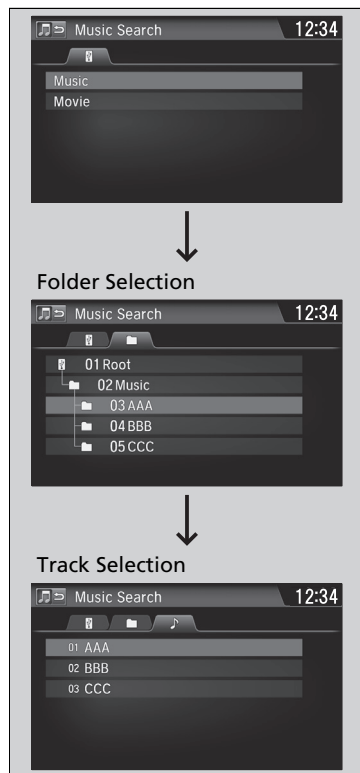


\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

\* Not available on all models

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

Except Mexican models

Select **Music** or **Movie**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use a recommended USB flash drive.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 246

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

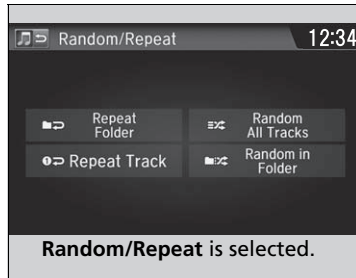
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 244

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Select a Play Mode

### Play Mode Menu Items

#### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

#### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

When playing a video file: \*

**Slow:** Slows down the playing speed.

\* Not available on all models

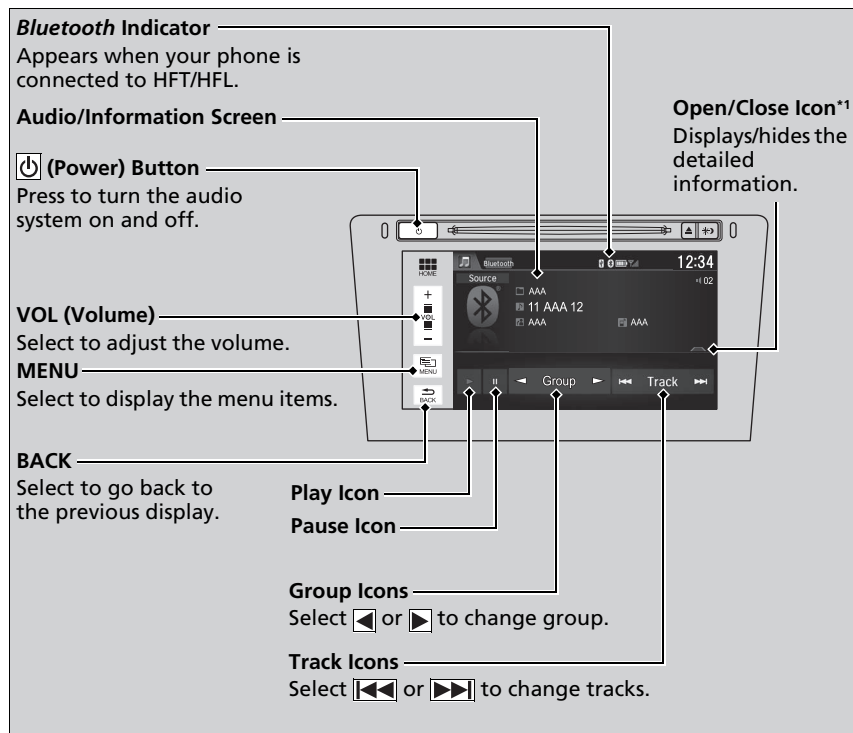


## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System/*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL).

☑ **Phone Setup** P. 292



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT/HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

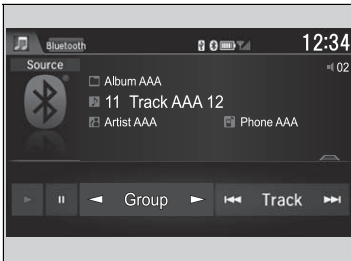
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT/HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

\*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



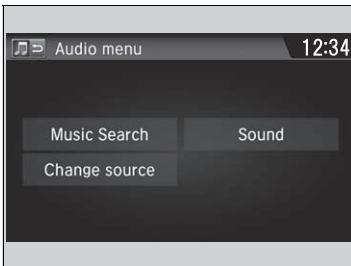
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT/HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## To resume or pause a file

Select the play icon or pause icon, respectively.

## Searching for Music



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.
  - ▶ The selection begins playing.

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

➡ **HDMI™ Port**\* P. 192

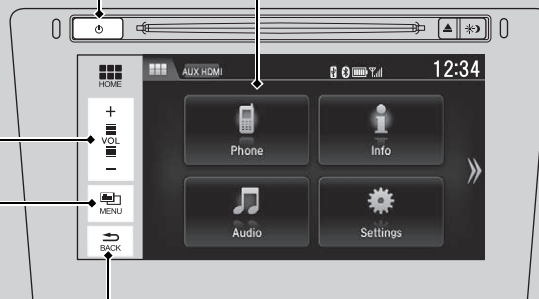
 **(Power) Button**  
Press to turn the audio system on and off.

**Audio/Information Screen**

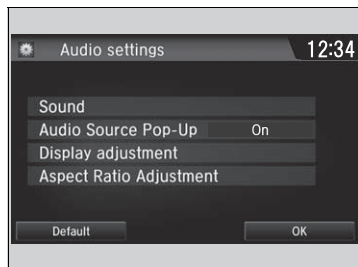
**VOL (Volume)**  
Select to adjust the volume.

**MENU**  
Select to display the menu items.

**BACK**  
Select to go back to the previous display.



## ■ Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select **Settings** to go to the settings screen.
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
4. Select the setting you want.
5. Select **OK**.

## ▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

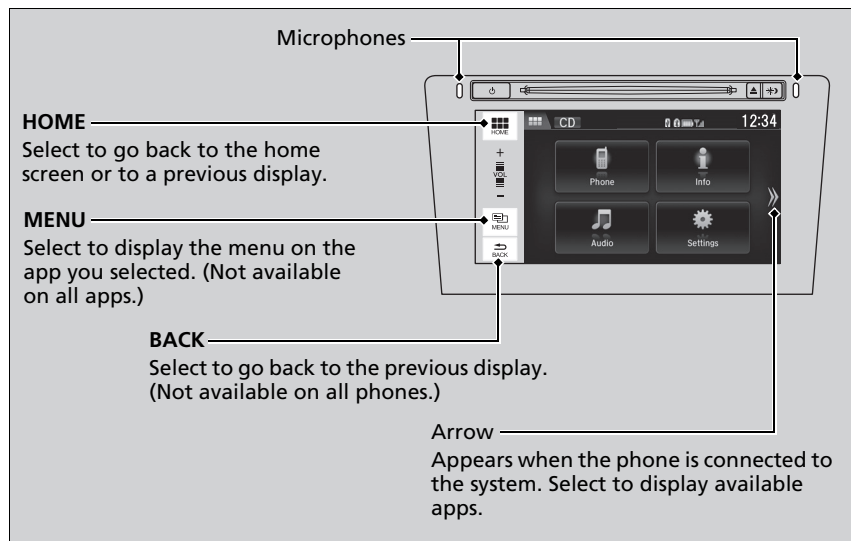
## Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

➤ **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 241

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 292



### Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

➤ **To change the currently paired phone**  
P. 293

The following may vary by phone type:

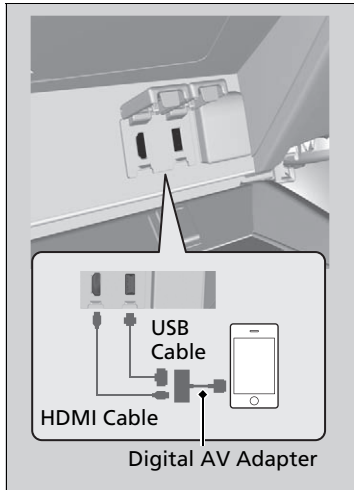
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

## ■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.  
 ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 292
2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.  
 ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
4. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.  
 ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.  
 ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select **HOME**.


## ☒ Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB jack, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ cable purchasing information.

## Siri Eyes Free


You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System/*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL).

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 292

### ▶▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

While driving, we recommend only using Siri through the  button on the steering wheel (Siri Eyes Free).

### ▶▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

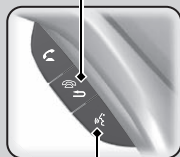
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

## ■ Using Siri Eyes Free



**(Hang-up/back) Button**

Press to deactivate Siri.

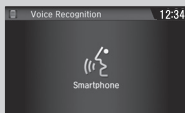


**(Talk) Button**

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.







Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free



While in Siri Eyes Free:  
The display remains the same.  
No feedback or commands appears.

## CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unplayable File	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</li> </ul>
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Push Eject <sup>*1</sup>	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the  (CD eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</li> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 247</li> </ul> </li> <li>If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc.</li> <li>Insert a different disc.</li> <li>If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li> <li>If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer.</li> </ul> <p>Do not try to force the disc out of the player.</p>
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Please push eject <sup>*2</sup>		
Busy Please Wait <sup>*1</sup> Busy... Please wait. <sup>*2</sup>		
Mecha Error		
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual	Servo error	
Check Disc	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 247</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Heat Error	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</li> </ul>

\*1:Models with monochrome audio system

\*2:Models with Display Audio system



## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error* <sup>2</sup>	Appears when there is a problem with the USB flash drive. Check if the device is compatible with the USB port.
The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual.* <sup>2</sup>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Bad USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual* <sup>1</sup>	
Unsupported Ver.* <sup>1</sup> Unsupported Version* <sup>2</sup>	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data* <sup>1</sup> No data* <sup>2</sup>	<div>iPod</div> Appears when the iPod is empty.
No Song* <sup>1</sup>	<div>USB flash drive</div> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or MP4* files in the USB flash drive.
	<div>iPod and USB flash drive</div> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

\*1:Models with monochrome audio system

\*2:Models with Display Audio system

\* Not available on all models

Error Message	Solution
<b>Unsupported</b>	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

## Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labelled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



### CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

### Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

## ■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the centre to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabiliser rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

### ►► Protecting CDs

#### NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

#### Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labelled, and excessively thick CDs



Bubbled/  
Wrinkled



With Label/  
Sticker



Using Printer  
Label Kit



Sealed



With Plastic Ring

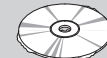
- Damaged CDs



Chipped/  
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Poor quality CDs

- Small CDs



8-cm CD

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### ■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 6th generation) launch in 2010
iPod nano (7th generation) launch in 2012
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010
iPod touch (5th generation) launch in 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s

### ■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or MP4\* formats may be unsupported.

### ⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### ⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Models with Display Audio system

■ Recommended Devices

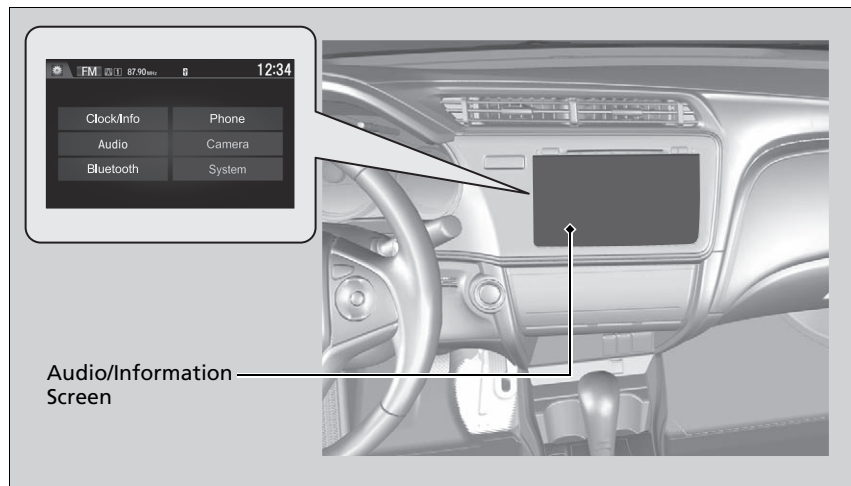
Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC	MP3
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	720 X 576 pixels	

## Models with Display Audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



### ▶▶ How to customize

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

#### Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift to **P**.

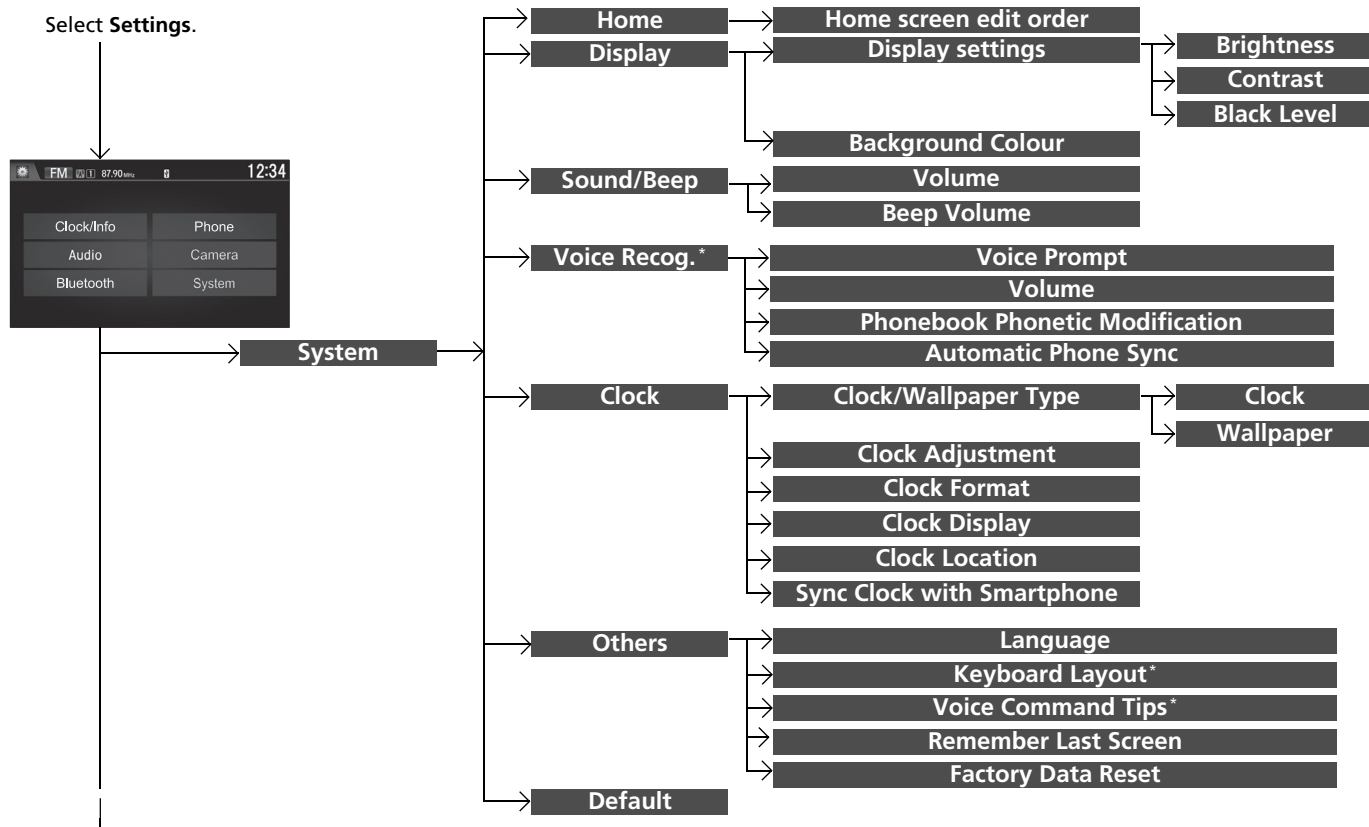
#### Manual transmission models

- Set the parking brake.

To customize other features, select **Settings**.

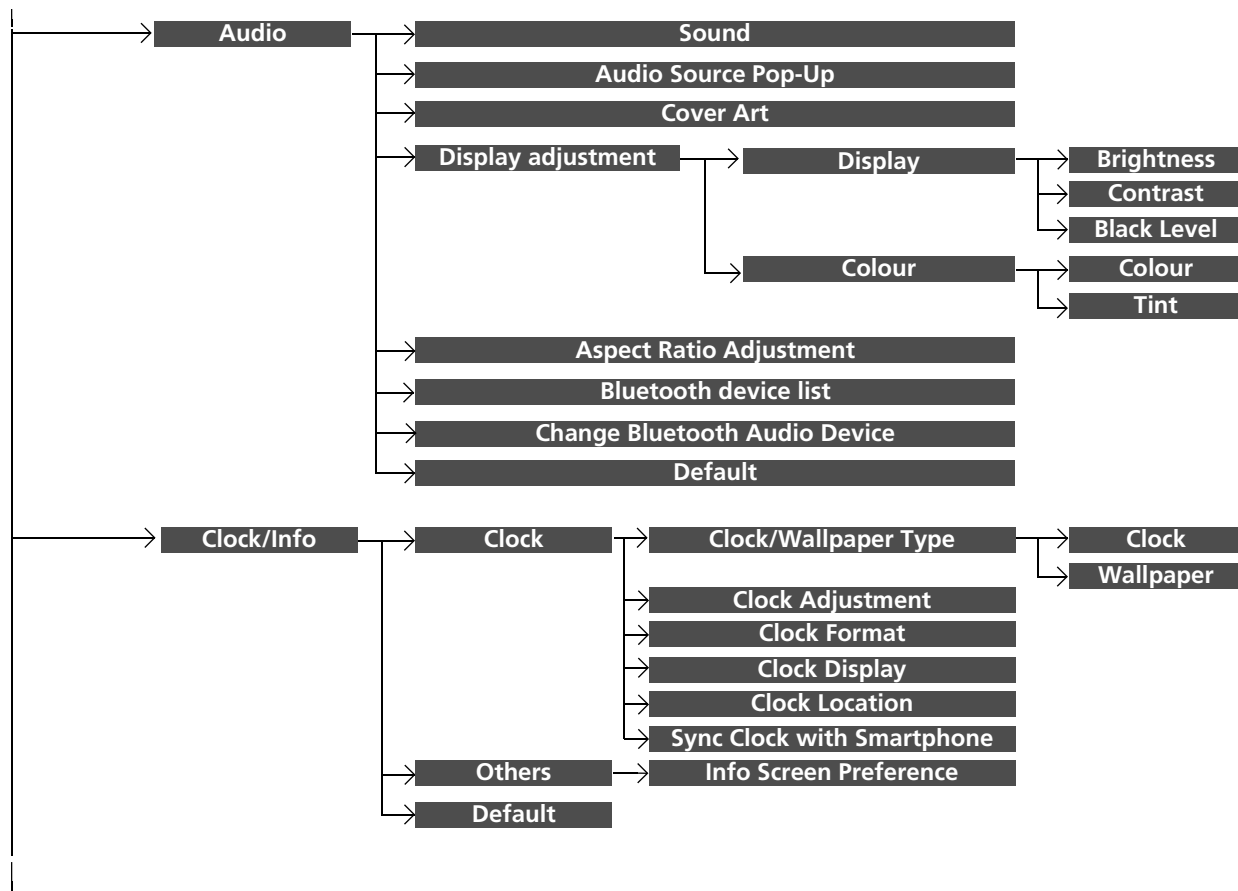
▶ **List of customizable options** P. 254

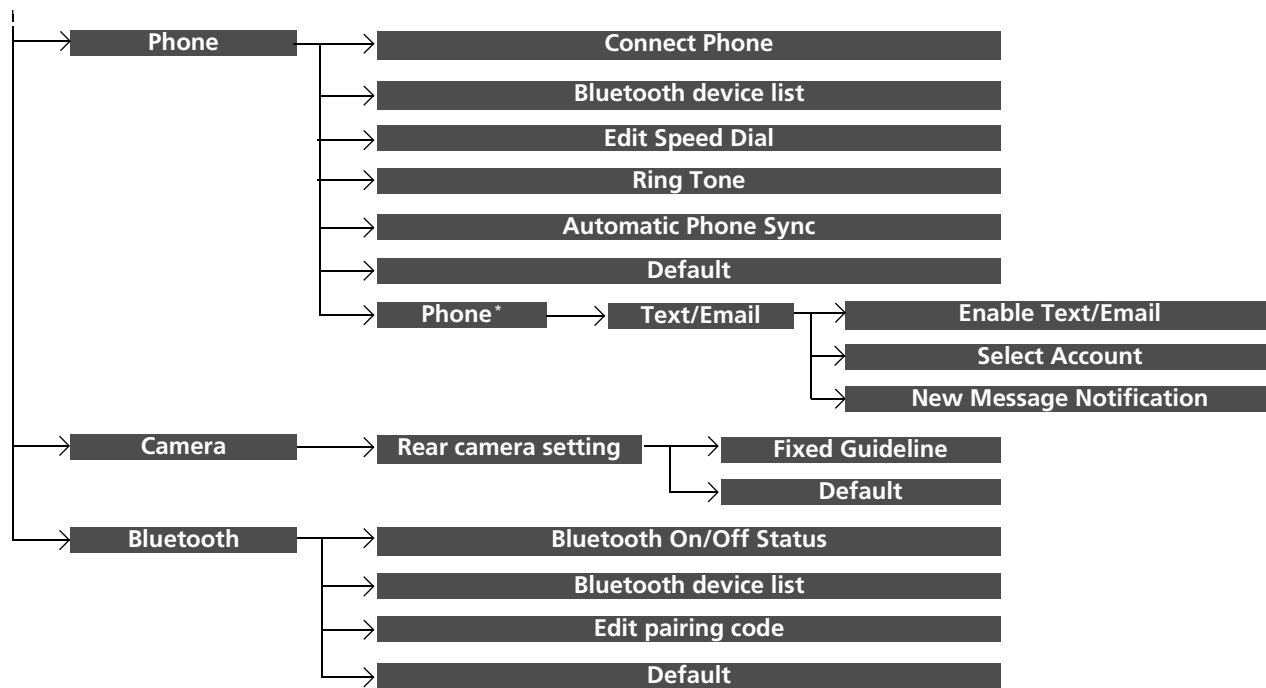
## ■ Customization flow



\* Not available on all models







■ List of customizable options



Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Home	Home screen edit order	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—
	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
		Background Colour	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	Blue* <sup>1</sup> /Amber/Red/Violet
	Sound/Beep	Volume	Changes the sound volume.	0~6* <sup>1</sup> ~11
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2* <sup>1</sup> /3
	Voice Recog.*	Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
		Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	0~6* <sup>1</sup> ~11
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook.	—
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	<b>Clock</b>	Changes the clock display type.	<b>Analog/Digital<sup>*1</sup>/Small Digital/Off</b>
		<b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes the wallpaper type.</li> <li>• Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li> <li>• Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li> </ul>	<b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1</sup>/Metallic</b>
		<b>Clock Adjustment</b>	Adjusts clock. ▶ <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 110	—
		<b>Clock Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12H<sup>*1</sup>/24H</b>
		<b>Clock Display</b>	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Clock Location</b>	Changes the clock display layout.	<b>Right Upper<sup>*1</sup>/Left Upper/Right Lower/Left Lower/Off</b>
		<b>Sync Clock with Smartphone</b>	Selects whether the clock links to the device you connect.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	<b>Language</b>	Changes the display language.	<b>English/French/Spanish</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Keyboard Layout</b> *	Selects the on-screen keyboard type.	<b>Alphabet/QWERTY</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Others</b>		
	<b>Voice Command Tips</b> *	Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Remember Last Screen</b>	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default.  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 261	<b>Yes/No</b>
Audio	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>System</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Sound</b>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.  <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 222	<b>-6 ~ 0</b> * <sup>1</sup> ~ <b>+6 (Bass and Treble)</b> , <b>RR9~0</b> * <sup>1</sup> ~ <b>FR9 (Fader)</b> , <b>L9~0</b> * <sup>1</sup> ~ <b>R9 (Balance)</b> , <b>Off/Low/Mid</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>High (Speed Volume Compensation)</b>
	<b>Audio Source Pop-Up</b>	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when <b>Audio</b> is selected on the home screen.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>

\* 1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	CD, iPod, USB mode <b>Cover Art</b>	Turns the cover art display on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	USB*, HDMI™ mode <b>Display adjustment</b>	<b>Brightness</b>	See <b>System</b> on P. 254
		<b>Contrast</b>	
		<b>Black Level</b>	
		<b>Colour</b>	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen. —
	<b>Colour</b>	<b>Tint</b>	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen. —
	USB*, HDMI™ mode <b>Aspect Ratio Adjustment</b>	Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio from <b>Original</b> (only USB), <b>Normal</b> , <b>Full</b> and <b>Zoom</b> .	<b>Original<sup>*1</sup></b> (only USB)/ <b>Normal/Full<sup>*1</sup>/Zoom</b>
	Bluetooth® Audio mode <b>Bluetooth device list</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT/HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. 📱 <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 292	—
	Bluetooth® Audio mode <b>Change Bluetooth Audio Device</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device to HFT/HFL.	—
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Clock/Info	Clock	Clock/ Wallpaper Type	Clock Wallpaper	See <b>System</b> on P. 255
		Clock Adjustment		
		Clock Format		
		Clock Display		
		Clock Location		
		Sync Clock with Smartphone		
	Others	Info Screen Preference	Changes the information screen type.	Info Top/Info Menu/ Off*1
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info</b> settings group as default.	Yes/No

\* 1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	<b>Connect Phone</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT/HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 292	—
	<b>Bluetooth device list</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT/HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 292	—
	<b>Edit Speed Dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➤ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 299	—
	<b>Ring Tone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile phone</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT/HFL.	<b>On/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone</b> and <b>Text/Email</b> * settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Enable Text/Email</b>	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Text/Email</b> *	<b>Select Account</b>	—
	<b>New Message Notification</b>	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models



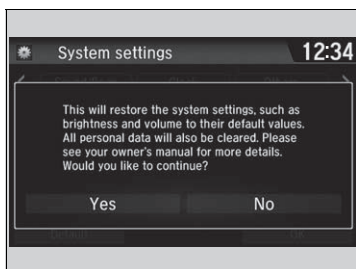
Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear camera setting	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear camera setting</b> group as default.	Yes/No
Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status		Selects to display the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	Bluetooth device list		Pairs a new phone to HFT/HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 292	—
	Edit pairing code		Edits the pairing code. ➤ <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 293	Random/Fixed <sup>*1</sup>
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Bluetooth</b> settings group as default.	Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting

Models with Display Audio system

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select the **Others** tab.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.

### Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

## Models with monochrome audio system

### Mexican models

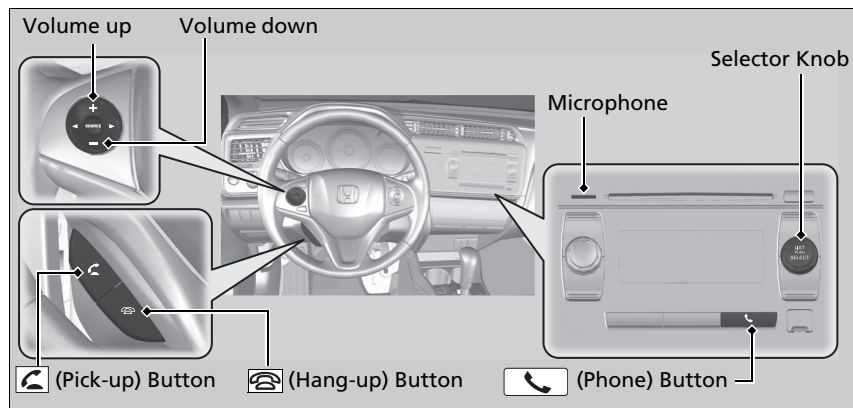
Your vehicle is equipped with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL), which has the same features as HFT does. Though images in this section represent HFT, you can use them for reference.

### Except Mexican models

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT/HFL

### HFT/HFL Buttons



## Hands-Free Telephone System\*/Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®\*

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT/HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Up to 15 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

**Speed Dial** P. 278

Up to 10 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology


The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.


### HFT/HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFT/HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

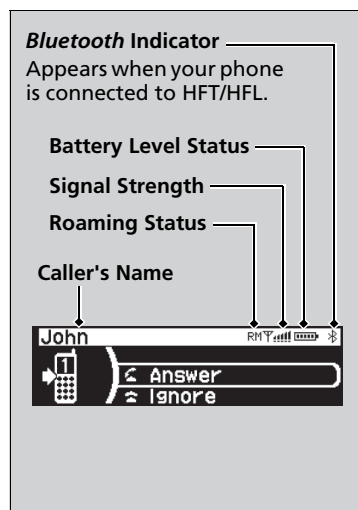
 **(Pick-up) button\***: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up) button\***: Press to end a call.

 **(Phone) button**: Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

**Selector knob**: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press  to set your selection.

## HFT/HFL Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## HFT/HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.\*

\* Not available on all models

## HFT/HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1 to use the system.

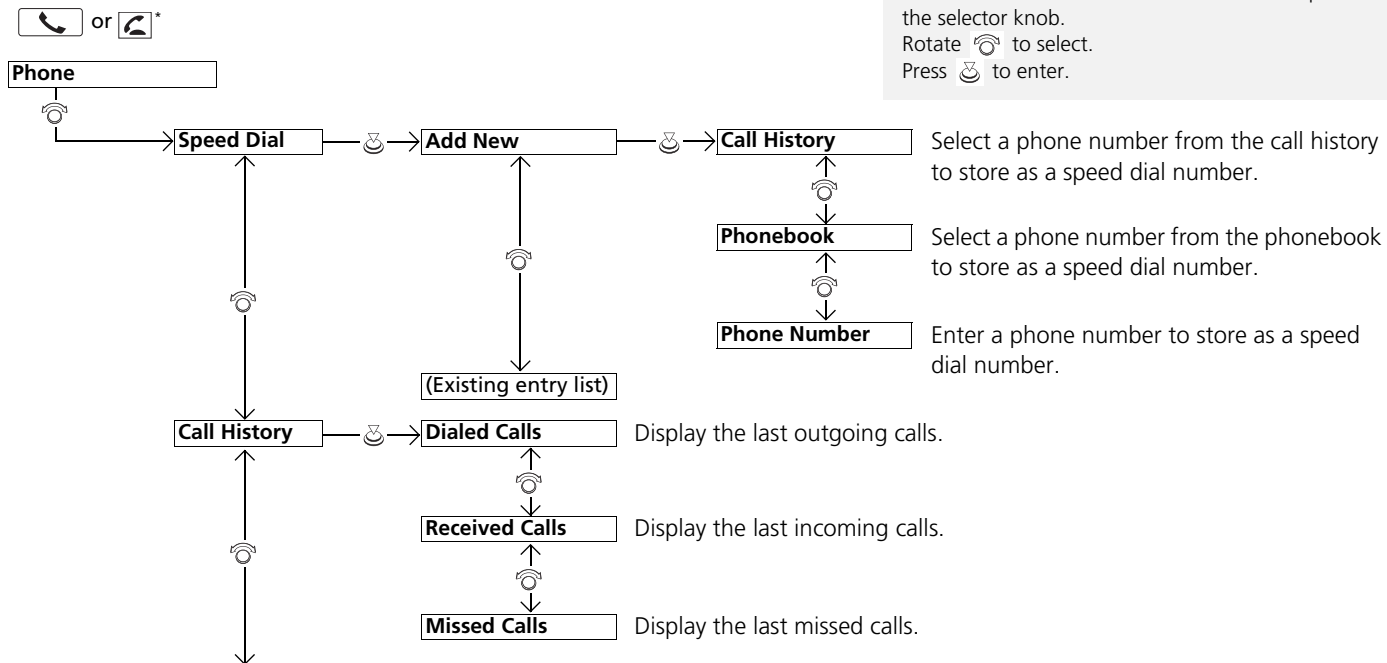
### ►► HFT/HFL Menus

To use HFT/HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

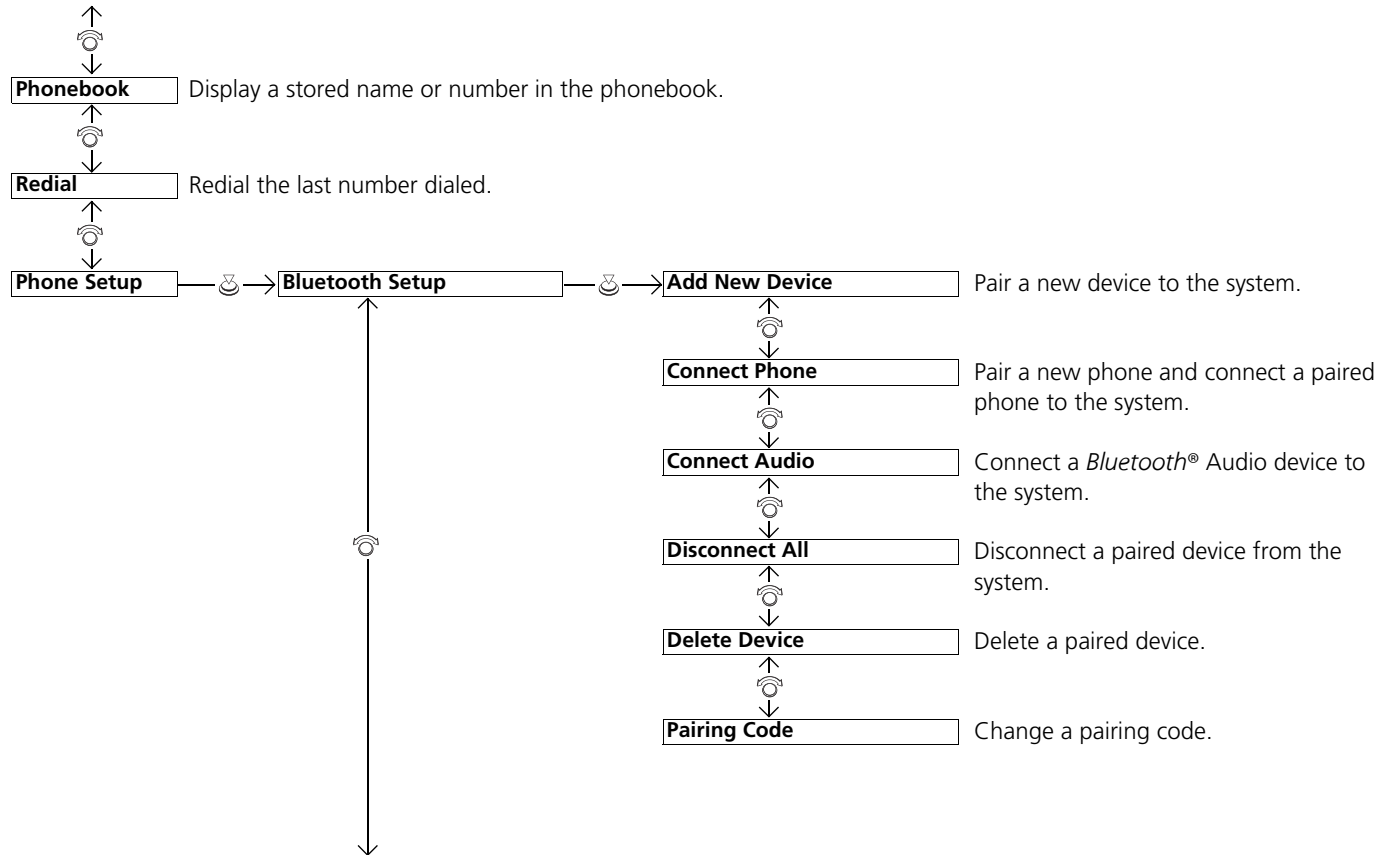
Rotate  to select.

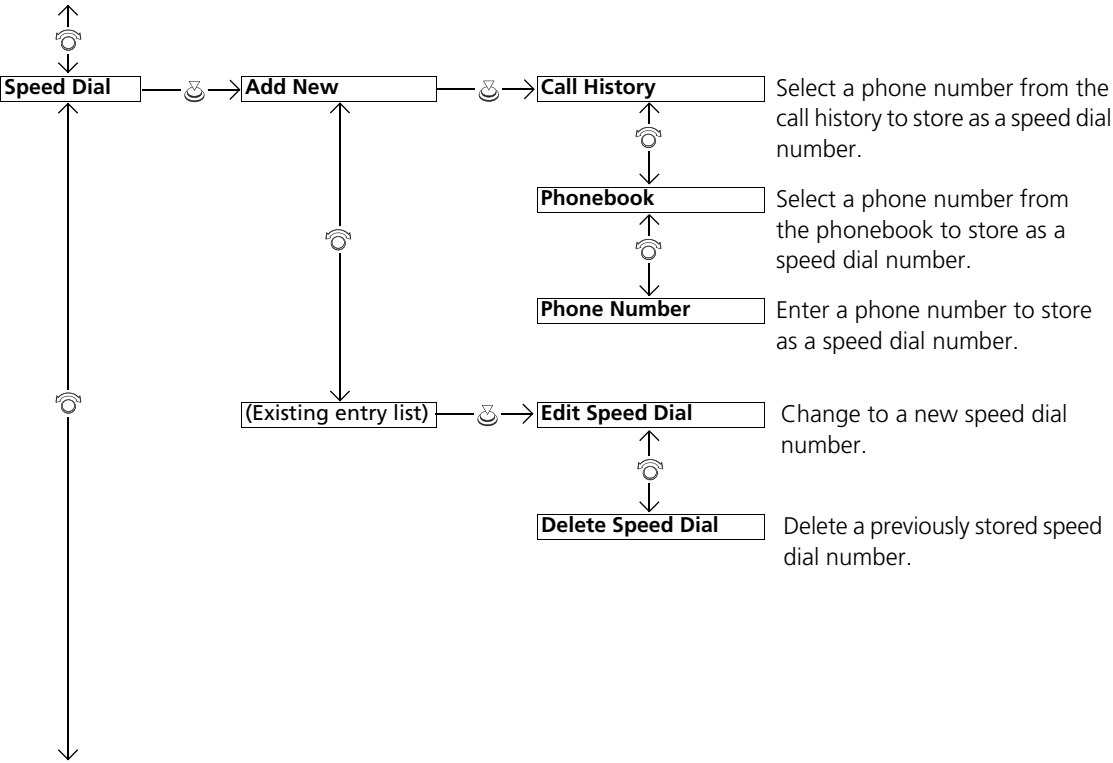
Press  to enter.

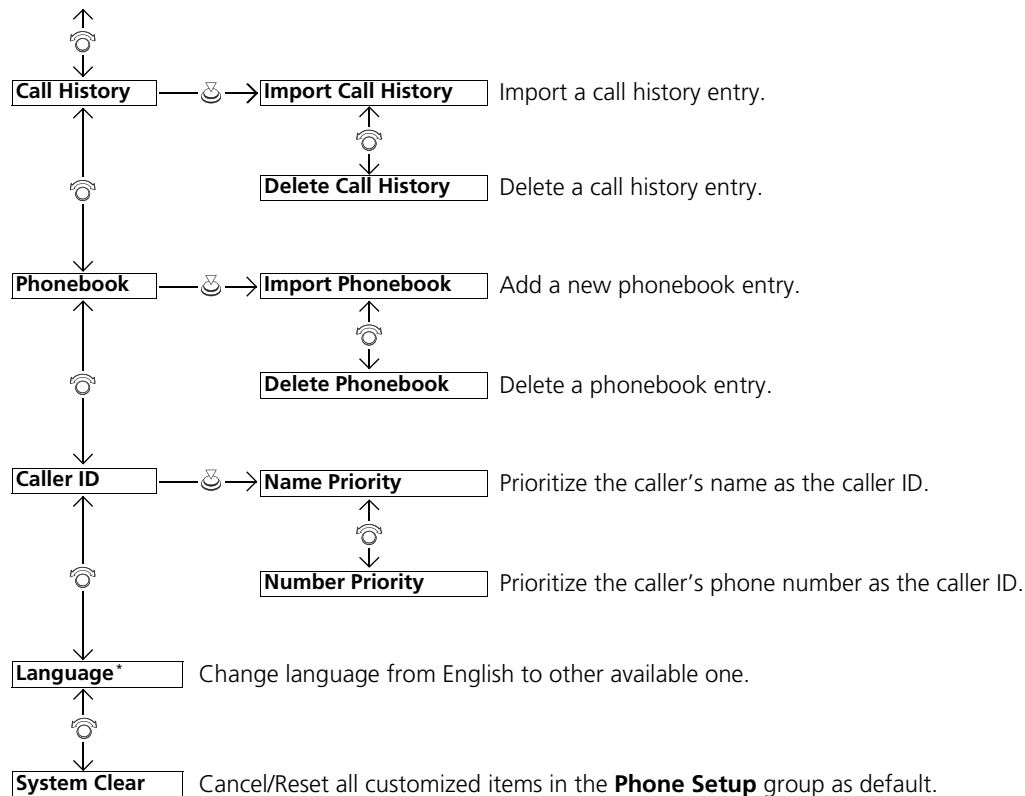


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models












\* Not available on all models



## ■ Phone Setup

### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search mode, then press .
4. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone. When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

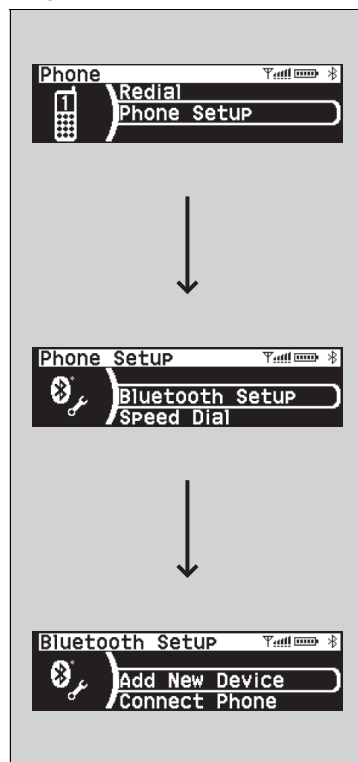
## » Phone Setup









Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to five phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

■ To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)

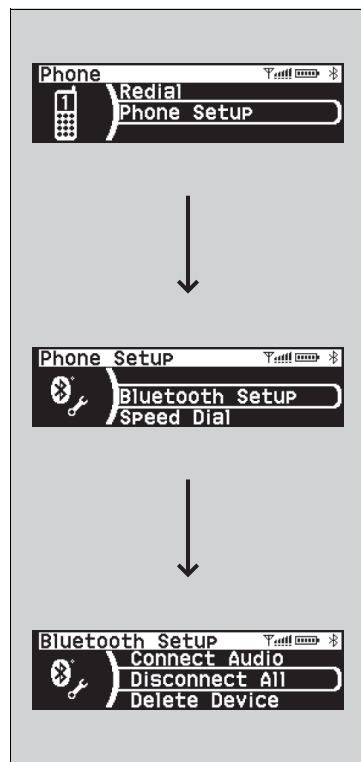










1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
  - ▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Add New Device**, then press .
5. Make sure your phone is in search mode, then press .
6. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone.  
When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

\* Not available on all models

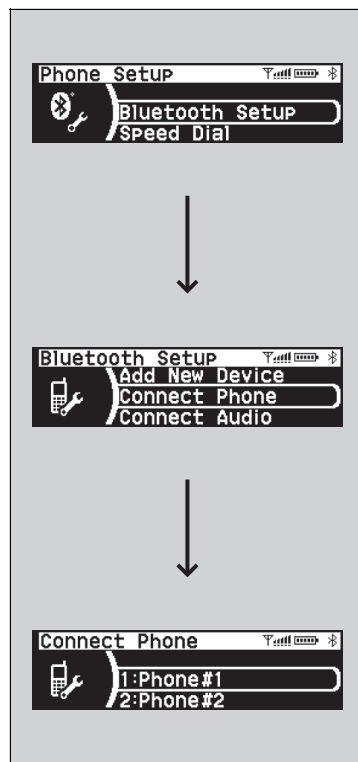
*Continued*

## ■ To disconnect the paired phone



1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Disconnect All**, then press .

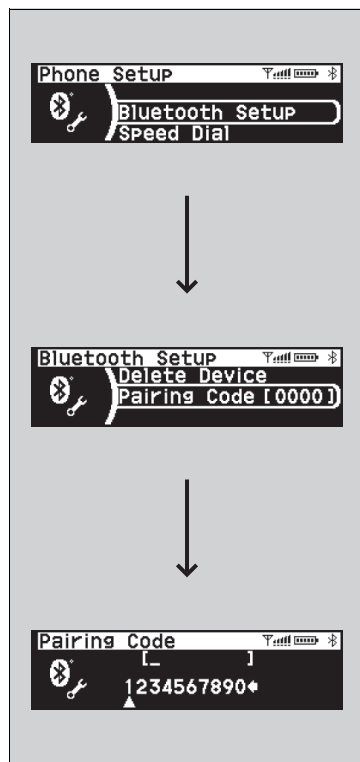
## ■ To change the currently paired phone












1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect Phone**, then press .  
► The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .

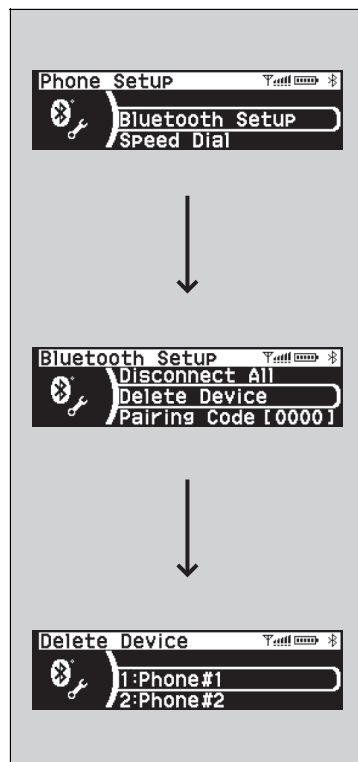
\* Not available on all models













## ■ To change the pairing code setting



1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Pairing Code**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .

## ■ To delete a paired phone

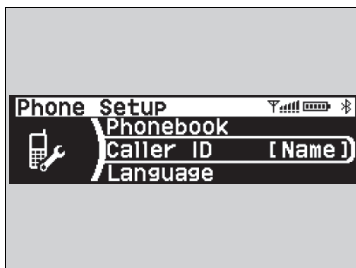


1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete Device**, then press .  
► The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate  to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Caller's ID Information

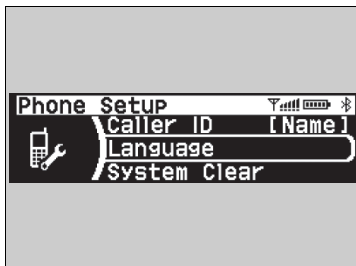
You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

## ■ Change Language\*

You can set the system language.



1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Language**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

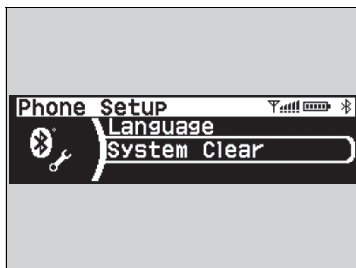
## » Caller's ID Information










**Name Priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

**Number Priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

## ■ To Clear the System

All speed dial entries, all imported phonebook data, all call history data, paired phones, pairing codes, caller's ID settings, and volume settings are reset as default.



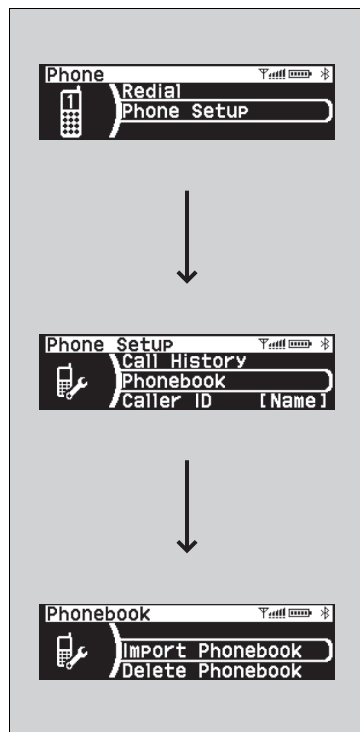
1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Cellular Phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are manually imported to the system.



### ■ To import the phonebook data of the mobile phone

1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Import Phonebook**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
  - The system will begin importing the phonebook data.

### ■ To delete the imported phonebook data

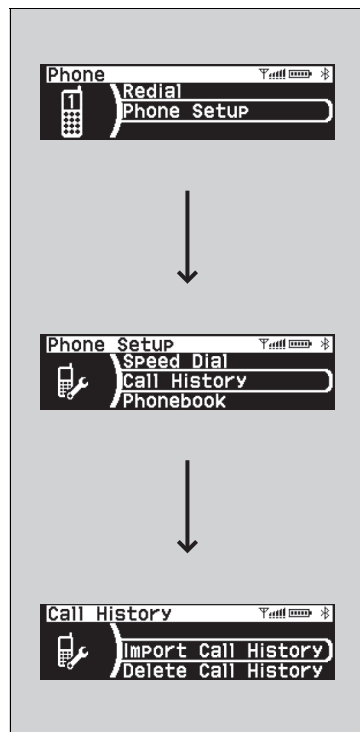
1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Phonebook**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## » Cellular Phonebook

For a list of this feature capability, ask a dealer.

## ■ Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its call history are manually imported to the system.



### ■ To import the call history data of the mobile phone

1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
  2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
  4. Rotate to select **Import Call History**, then press .
  5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
- The system will begin importing the phonebook data.

### ■ To delete the imported call history data

1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Call History**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

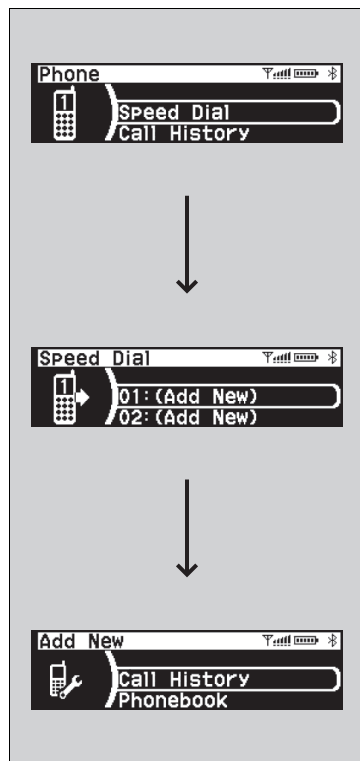
## Call History

For a list of this feature capability, ask a dealer.





\* Not available on all models



## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 15 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .  
► The screen changes to a speed dial list.

3. Rotate  to select **Add New**, then press .

From **Call History**:

- Select a number from the call history.










From **Phonebook**:

- Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.










From **Phone Number**:

- Input the number manually.

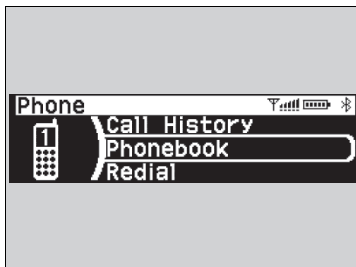
### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select **Edit Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a speed dial number you want to delete, then press .

## ■ Making a Call

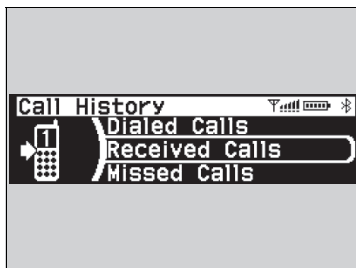


You can make calls by using the following:

- Call History
- Phonebook
- Speed Dial
- Redial









## ►► Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



### ■ To make a call using the Call History

The call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

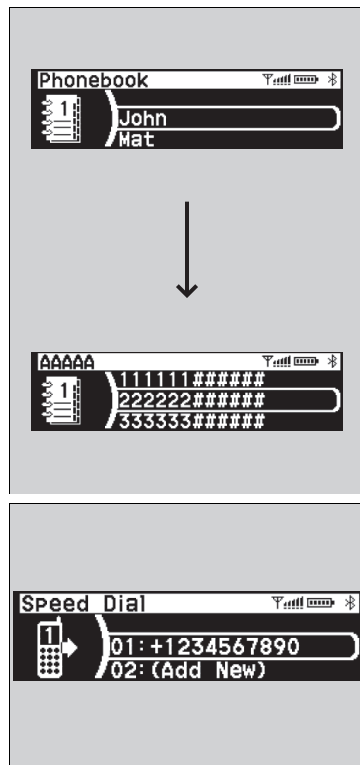
1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**, then press .  
▶ The screen changes to each list.
4. Rotate  to select a number, then press .  
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using the Call History









The call history is stored the last 10 dialed, received, or missed calls.

(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)







\* Not available on all models



### ■ To make a call using the phonebook

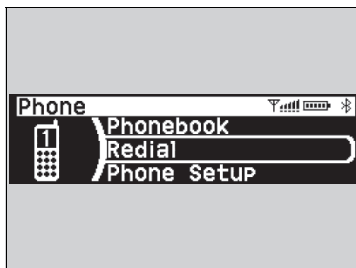
1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Phonebook**, then press .
- The phonebook is stored alphabetically.
3. Rotate  to select a name on the list, then press .
4. Rotate  to select a number on the list, then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Press the  (Phone) button or  button\*.
2. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select a number, then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.

### ► To make a call using the phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are manually imported to the system.

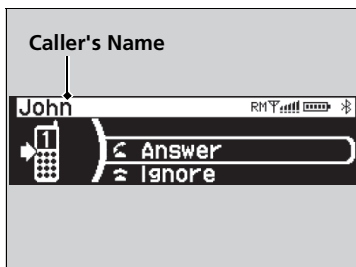


### ■ To make a call using redial

The latest dialed call can be redialed.

1. Press the (Phone) button or button\*.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .  
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the incoming call screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.\*  
Press the button to decline or end the call.\*

### ▶▶ Receiving a Call

#### Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.\*

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.\*

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons.\*

\* Not available on all models

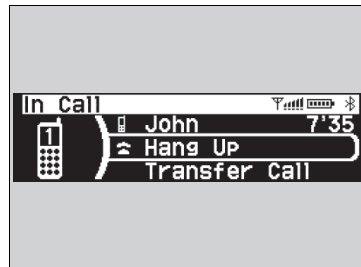



## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer Call:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.



1. Rotate  to select the option, then press



► Select **Mute** to turn on, then select **Mute** again to turn off.

## » Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

## Models with Display Audio system

### Mexican models

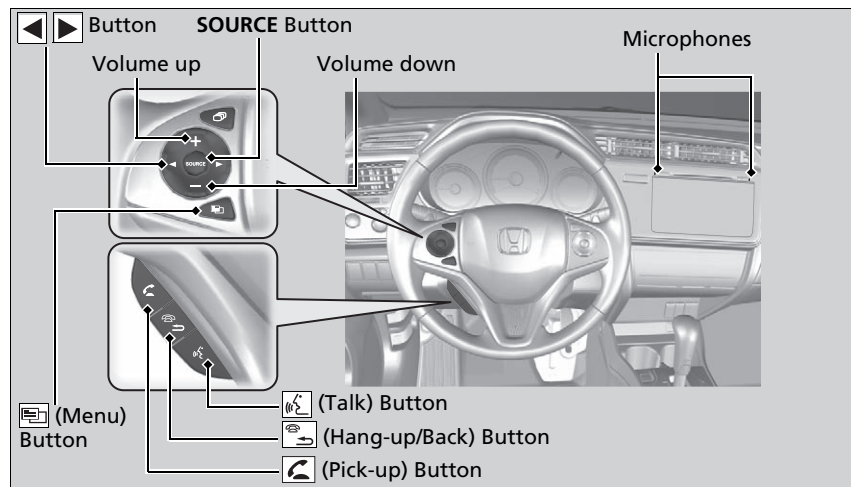
Your vehicle is equipped with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL), which has the same features as HFT does. Though images in this section represent HFT, you can use them for reference.

### Except Mexican models

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT/HFL

### HFT/HFL Buttons



\* Not available on all models


## Hands-Free Telephone System \*/Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® \*

To use HFT/HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**.

➤ **Customized Features**\* P. 250

### Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the upper part of the audio/information screen and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.


Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 299

Up to five call histories can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Continued

 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

 **(Menu) button:** Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the phone screen.

 **button:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone screen.

**SOURCE button:** Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone screen.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
2. Select **MENU**.

▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System\*/Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

*Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

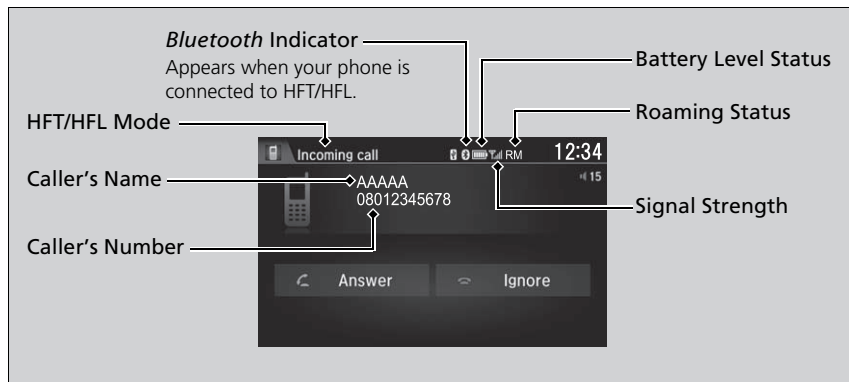
HFT/HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFT/HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

## HFT/HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## HFT/HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.\*

▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 250

\* Not available on all models

## HFT/HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1 to use the system.

### ■ Phone settings screen

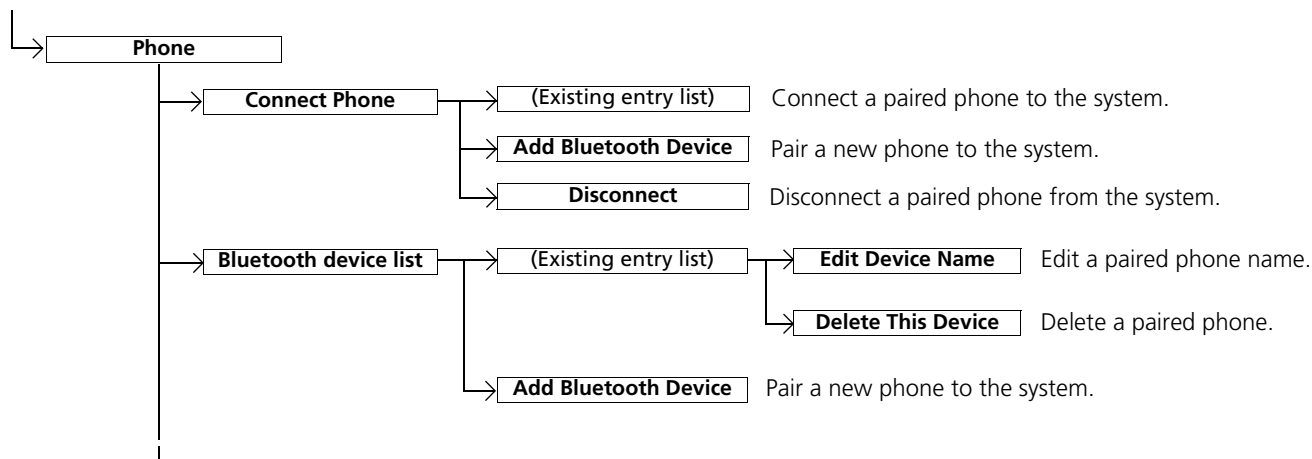


1. Select **HOME** to go to the home screen.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

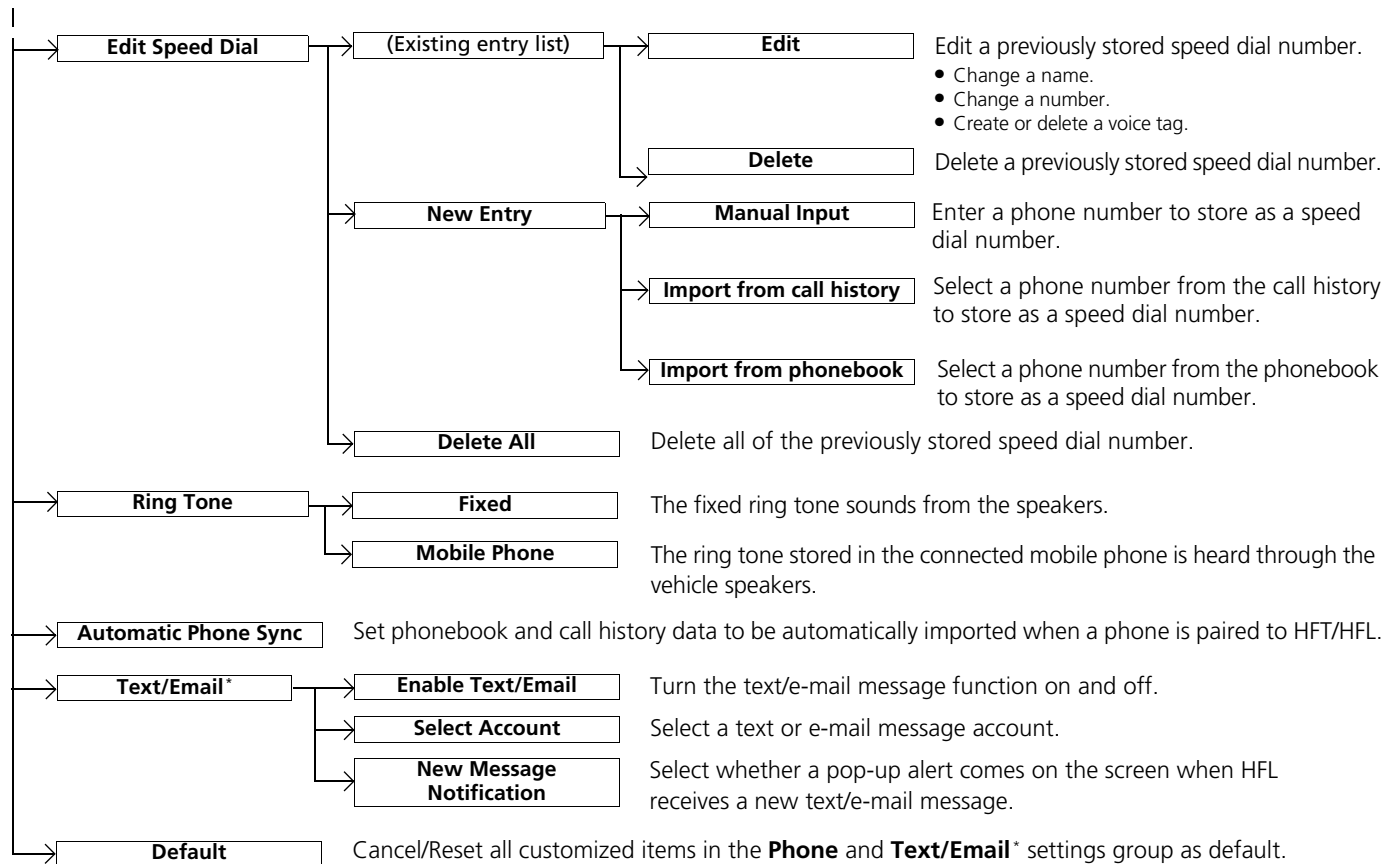
### ►► HFT/HFL Menus

To use HFT/HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

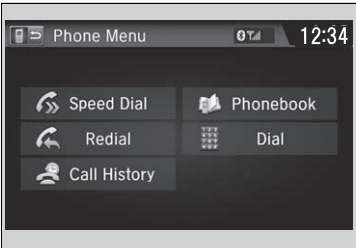


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



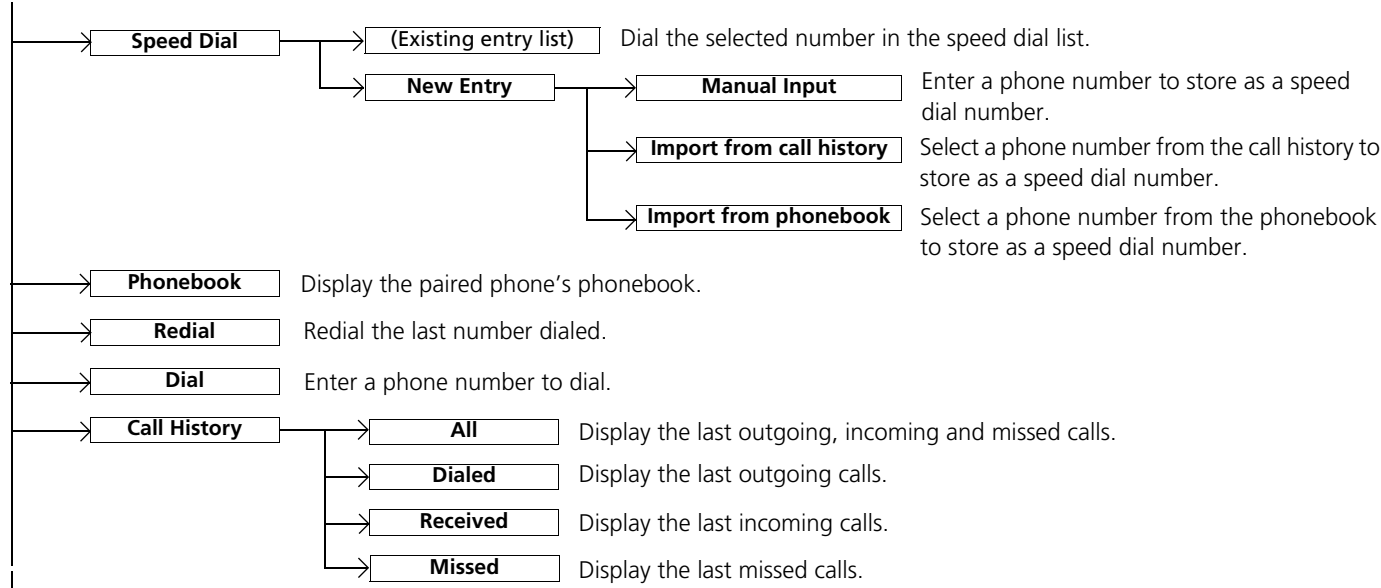
\* Not available on all models

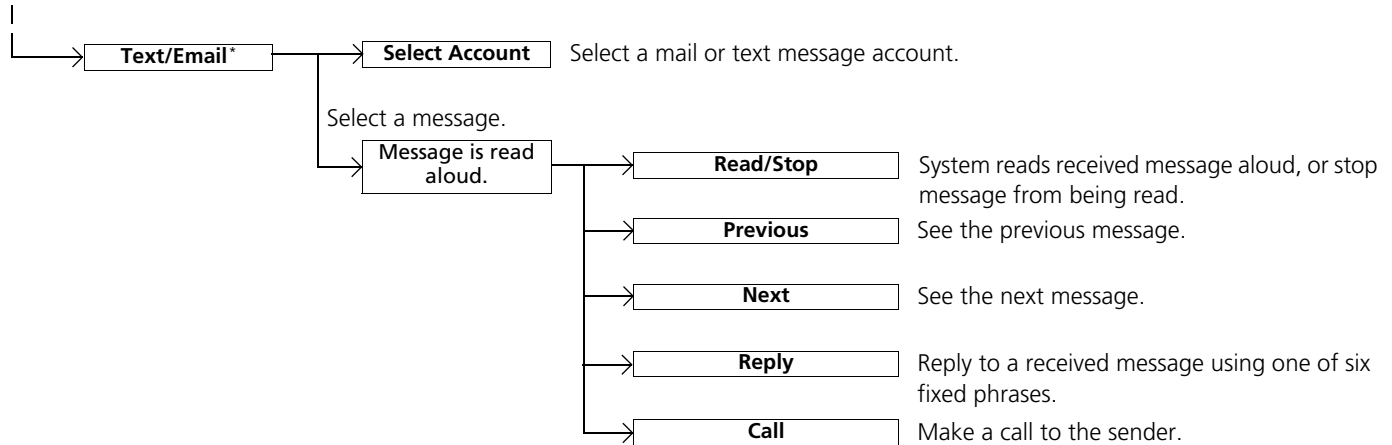
■ Phone Menu screen



1. Select **HOME** to go to the home screen.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **MENU**.

Features





\* Not available on all models



## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

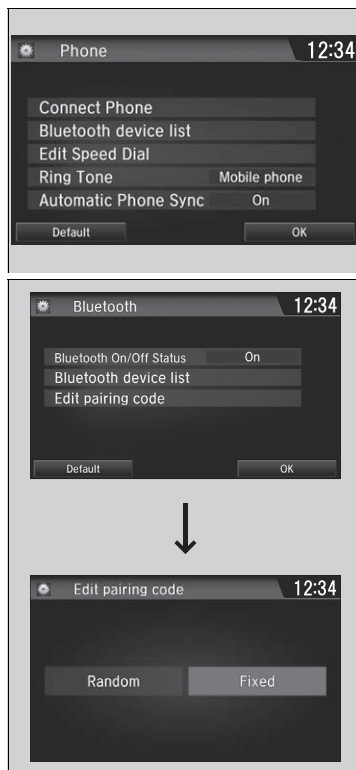
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **OK**.
  - ▶ HFT/HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT/HandsFreeLink**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

## Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.



### ■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Connect Phone**.
3. Select a phone to connect.  
 ► HFT/HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. Select **Edit pairing code**.
4. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

#### ►► To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT/HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

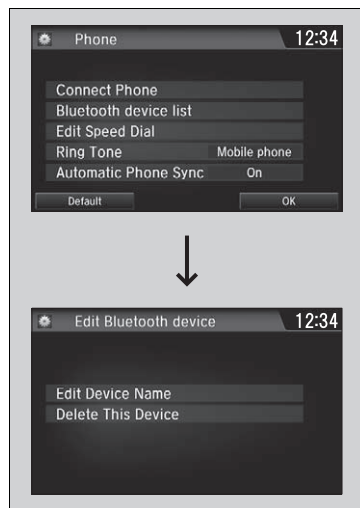
To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Connect Phone** screen.

#### ►► To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

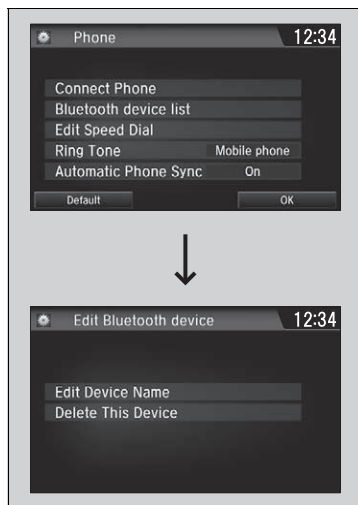
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



### ■ To edit an already-paired phone name

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
    ➤ **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Bluetooth device list**.
3. Select a paired phone you want to edit.
4. Select **Edit Device Name**.
5. Edit the name and select **OK**.

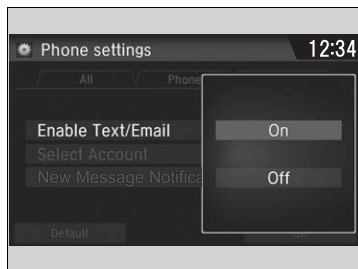


### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Bluetooth device list**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete This Device**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

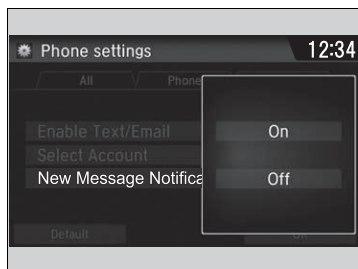
Mexican models

## ■ To Set Up a Text/E-mail Message Options



### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail function

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.  
 ► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.



### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.  
 ► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ►► To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.

**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

## Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



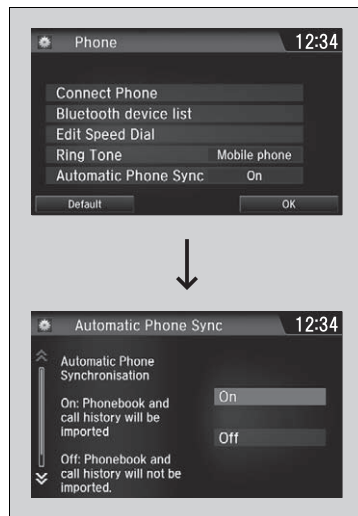
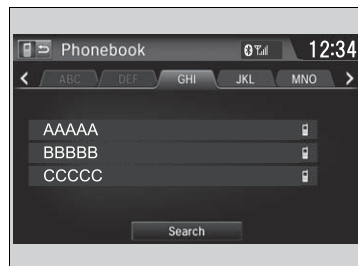
1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile phone**.

### Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

**Mobile phone:** The ring tone stored in the connected mobile phone sounds from the speakers.


## ■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

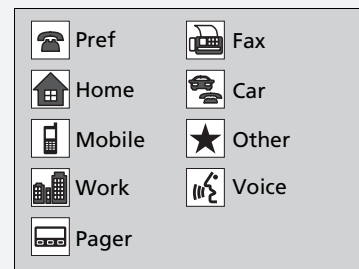
### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
 **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.

3. Select **On** or **Off**.

## ▶▶ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

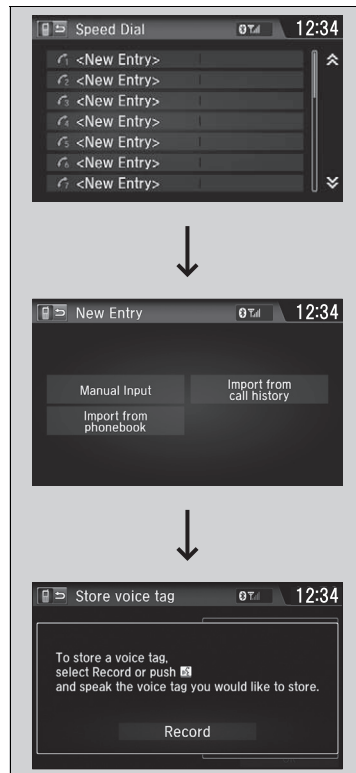


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

➤ **Phone Menu screen** P. 290

2. Select **Speed Dial**.

3. Select **New Entry**.

4. Select a place to choose a number.

From **Import from call history**:

▶ Select a number from the call history.

From **Manual Input**:

▶ Input the number manually.

From **Import from phonebook**:

▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.

6. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

7. Using the [voice tag icon] button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.


## Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the [voice tag icon] button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.





### ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

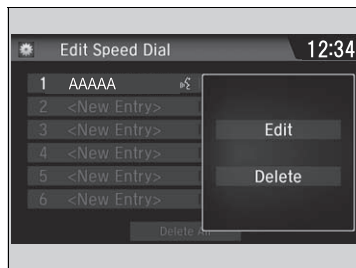
1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record** to store the voice tag.
6. Using the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

### » Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.  
 Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.  
 It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.  
 For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



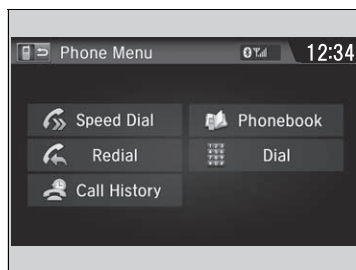
### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.


## ■ Making a Call



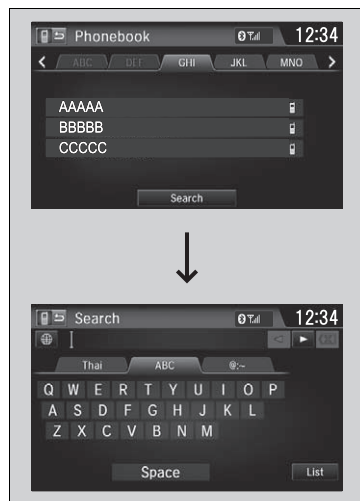
You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### ▶ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say the voice tag name.


Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.  
▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.  
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering letters.
4. Select a number.  
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select .  
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using the imported phonebook

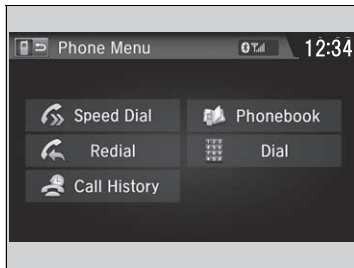
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 299

### ▶▶ To make a call using a phone number

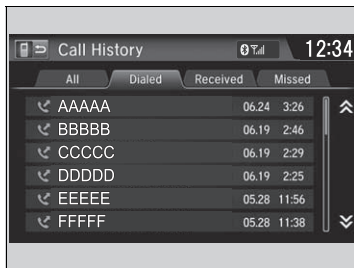
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 299



### ■ To make a call using redial

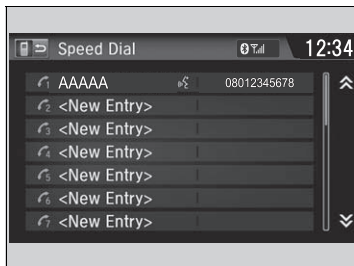
1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Redial**.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.


1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.


### ☒ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the  button to redial the last number dialed.


### ☒ To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.  
 (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

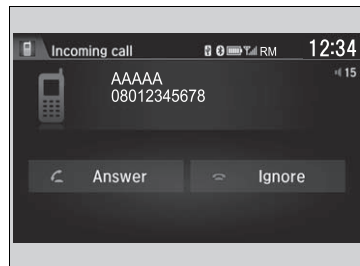
### ☒ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.



► **Speed Dial** P. 299

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.  
 Press the  button and follow the prompts.

## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

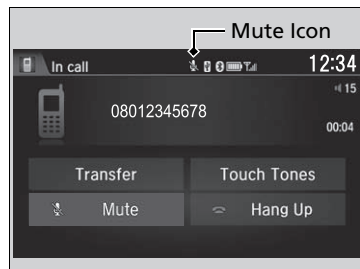
## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.




The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.


Select the option.

- The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


## » Receiving a Call



### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

## » Options During a Call

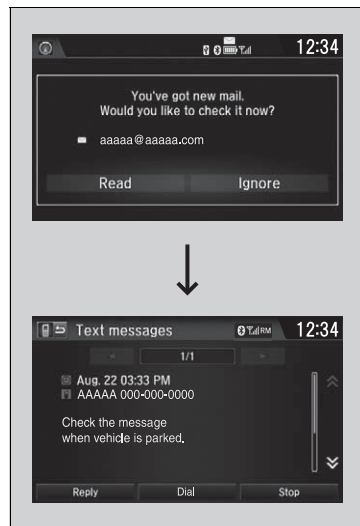
**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

## Mexican models

### Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

HFL can display newly received text and e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a connected mobile phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
  - ▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

### Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

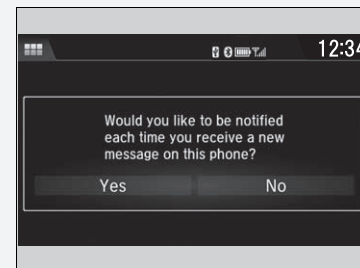
The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

- ▶ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail notice**  
P. 296

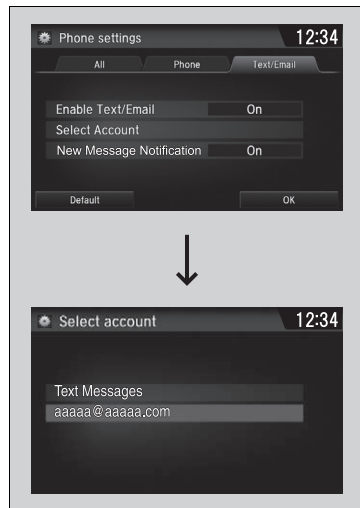


Continued

## Mexican models

### Selecting a Mail Account

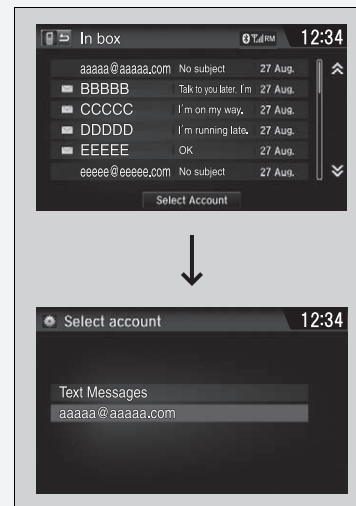
If a paired phone has text or e-mail message accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ➤ **Phone settings screen** P. 288
2. Select **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.  
 ► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail account you want.

### Selecting a Mail Account

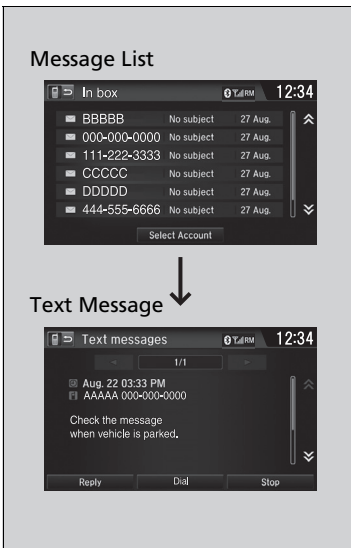
You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.



You can only receive notifications from one text or e-mail message account at a time.

Mexican models


## ■ Displaying Messages





### ■ Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Text/Email**.  
 ► Select account if necessary.
3. Select a message.  
 ► The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

### » Displaying Messages

The  icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's mailbox.

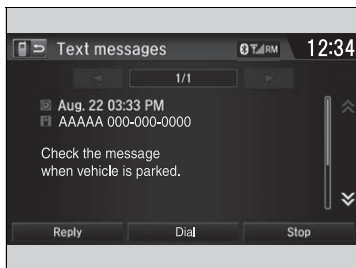
To see the previous or next message, select  or  on the message screen.





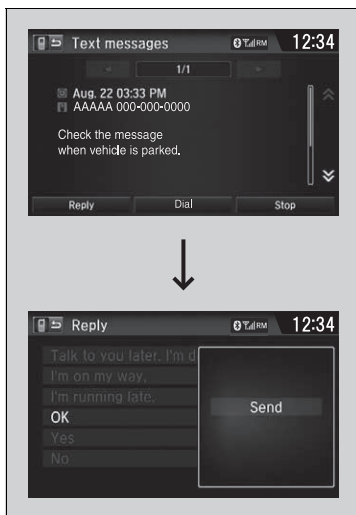
## ■ Displaying e-mails

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone Menu screen** P. 290
2. Select **Text/Email**.  
 ► Select account if necessary.
3. Select a folder.
4. Select a message.  
 ► The e-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.



### ■ Read or stop reading a message

1. Go to the text/e-mail message screen.  
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.  
    ❏ **Displaying Messages** P. 307
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.  
Select **Read** to start reading the message from the beginning.



### ■ Reply to a message

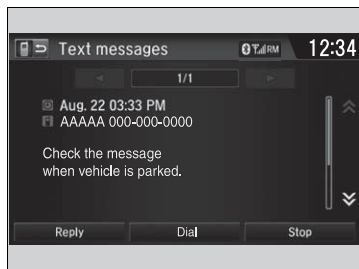
1. Go to the text/e-mail message screen.  
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.  
    ❏ **Displaying Messages** P. 307
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.  
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.  
▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

### ❏ Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.



### ■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Dial**.

# Driving



This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

## Before Driving

Driving Preparation .....	312
Load Limit .....	315

## Towing a Trailer..... 316

## When Driving

### Models without keyless access system

Starting the Engine .....	317
---------------------------	-----

### Models with keyless access system

Starting the Engine .....	320
Precautions While Driving.....	323
Continuously Variable Transmission* .....	324

### Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters

Shifting.....	325
---------------	-----

### Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters

Shifting.....	327
---------------	-----

### Manual transmission models

Shifting.....	331
ECON Button* .....	332
Cruise Control* .....	333
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System* .....	336
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .....	338
Deflation Warning System (DWS).....	340

## Braking

Brake System .....	342
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	344
Brake Assist System.....	345

Emergency Stop Signal .....	346
-----------------------------	-----

## Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped .....	347
--------------------	-----

Parking Sensor System* .....	348
------------------------------	-----

## Multi-View Rear Camera\* .....

## Refueling

Fuel Information .....	352
------------------------	-----

How to Refuel .....	353
---------------------	-----

## Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions.....	354
--	-----

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ✎ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 396
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - ✎ **Load Limit** P. 315
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat\*.
  - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 164
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 167
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 161
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 160

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

### Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by your self.

✎ **Headlight Adjuster\*** P. 156

\* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - 📌 **Indicators** P. 90

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 452

### Load Limit

#### **WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.



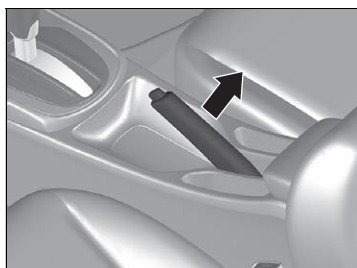
## Towing a Trailer

---

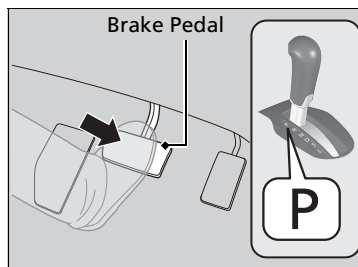
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Models without keyless access system

## Starting the Engine

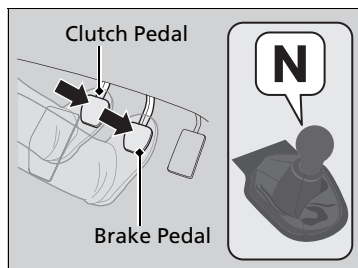


1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



### Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



### Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
  - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

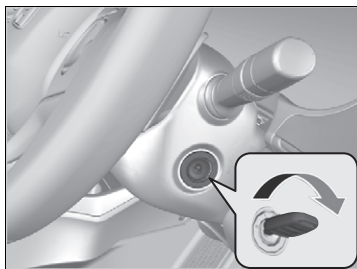
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system 'climate control system', and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 136



**All models**

3. Turn the ignition switch to START **III** without depressing the accelerator pedal.

## Starting to Drive

**Continuously variable transmission models**

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has gone off.  
**Parking Brake** P. 342
2. Put the shift lever in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

**Starting the Engine**

Do not hold the key in START **III** for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

## ■ Hill Start Assist System\*

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

### Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### Continuously variable transmission models

Move the shift lever to **[D]**, **[S]** or **[L]**\* when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## ⌘ Hill Start Assist System\*

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

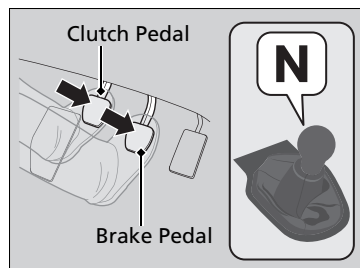
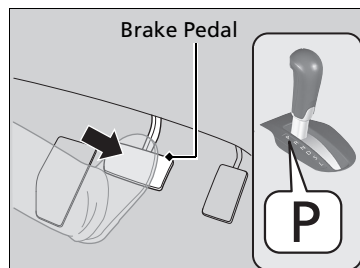
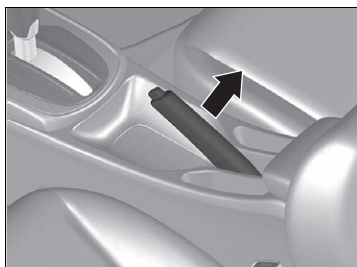
Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

\* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
  - The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

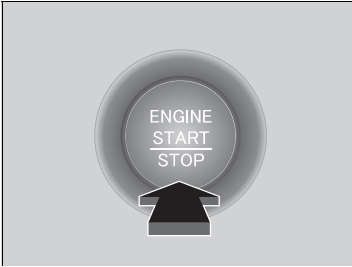
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

**Immobilizer System** P. 136



**All models**

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

## Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

**Continuously variable transmission models**

1. Shift to **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

**Manual transmission models**

- If the shift lever is in **N**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than **N**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

## Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

❏ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 428

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

## ■ Starting to Drive

### Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.

🔧 **Parking Brake** P. 342

2. Put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.

3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

### ■ Hill Start Assist System\*

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

### Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### Continuously variable transmission models

Move the shift lever to **[D]** or **[S]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### 🔧 Hill Start Assist System\*

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

## Precautions While Driving

### ■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

### ■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large truck is passing by.

### ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### ▶▶ Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I**<sup>\*1</sup> while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

## Continuously Variable Transmission \*

### ■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### ■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

### ⌘ Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

### ⌘ In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

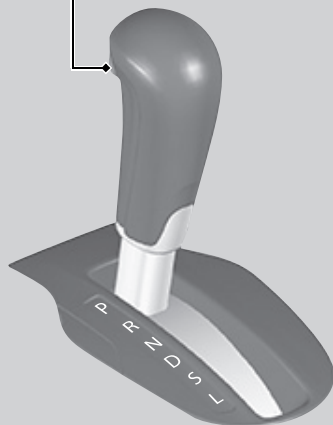
Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions

Release Button



- P** **Park**  
Used when parking or starting the engine
- R** **Reverse**  
Used when reversing
- N** **Neutral**  
Used when idling
- D** **Drive**  
Used for normal driving
- S** **Drive (S)**  
Used:
  - For better acceleration
  - To increase engine braking
  - When going up or down hills
- L** **Low**
  - Used to further increase engine braking
  - Used when going up or down hills

### ▶▶ Shifting

#### Models without keyless access system

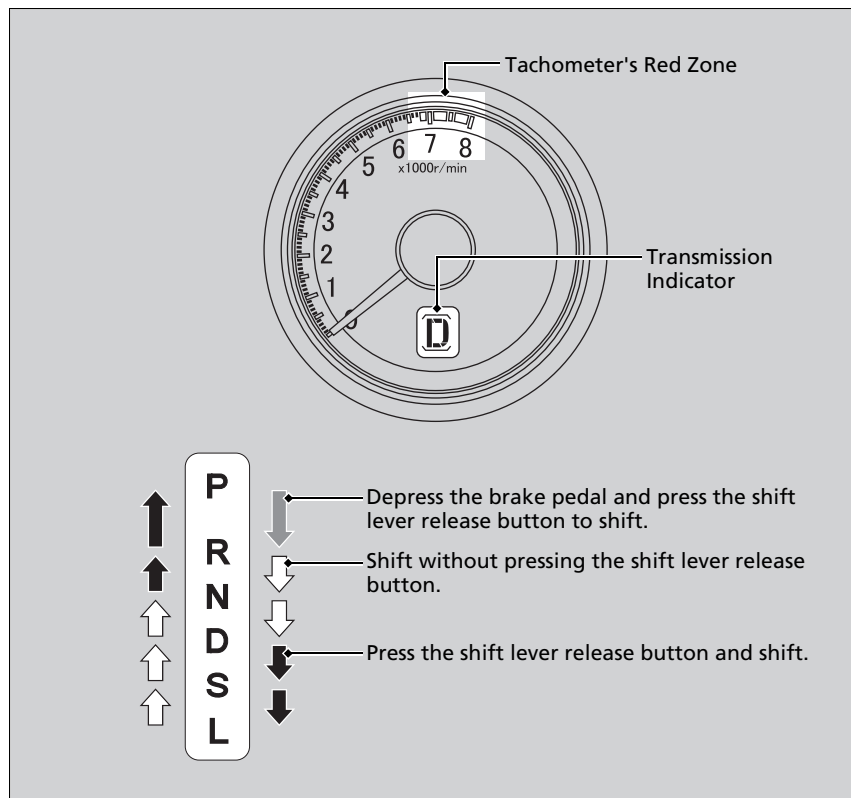
You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

#### Models with keyless access system

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.  
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

## ■ Shift Lever Operation



## ►► Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the transmission indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking **D** indicator indicates a transmission problem.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

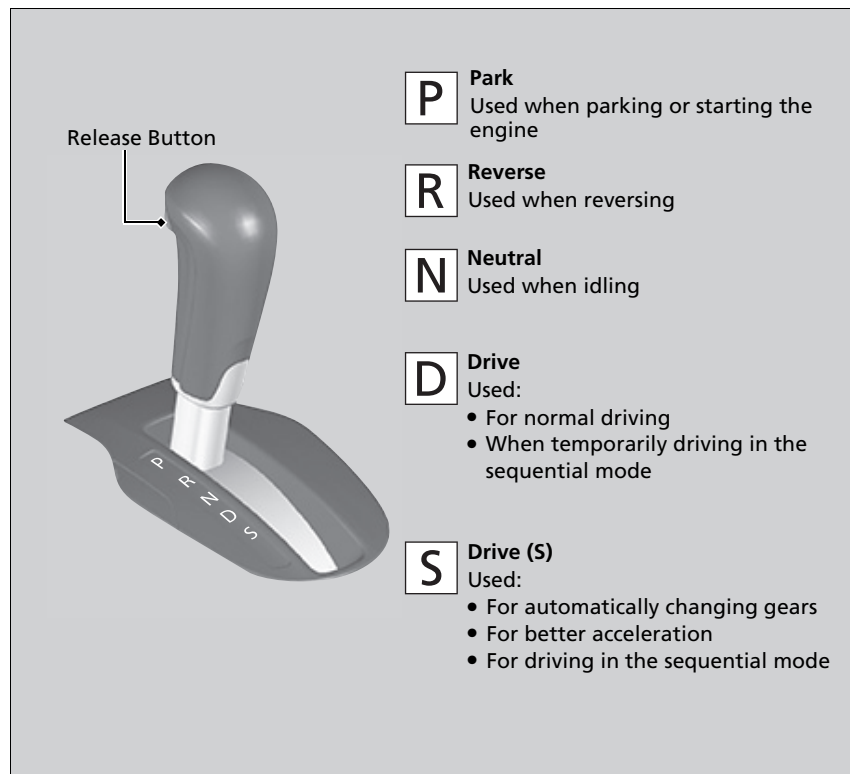
Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



### » Shifting

#### Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

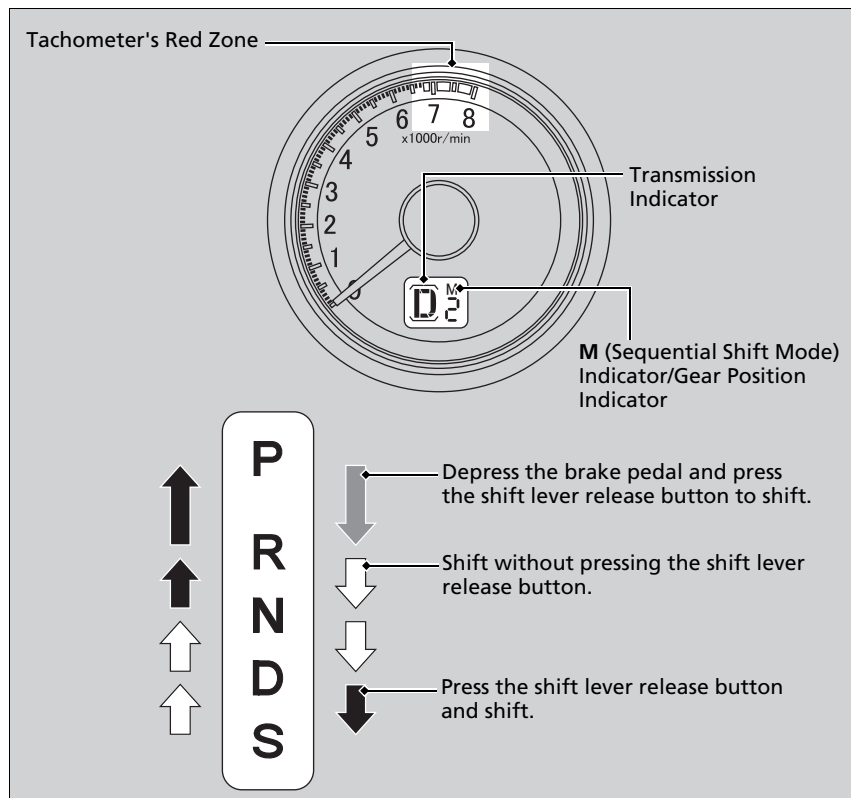
#### Models with keyless access system

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

## Shift Lever Operation



## Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the transmission indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking **D** indicator indicates a transmission problem.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

## ■ Sequential Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 5th gears without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission will switch to the sequential shift mode.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The vehicle will go into the sequential shift mode momentarily, and the gear position indicator will come on.

Once you start travelling at a constant speed, the sequential shift mode will automatically switch off, and the gear position indicator will go off.

Hold the **[+]** paddle shifter for two seconds to return to normal drive.

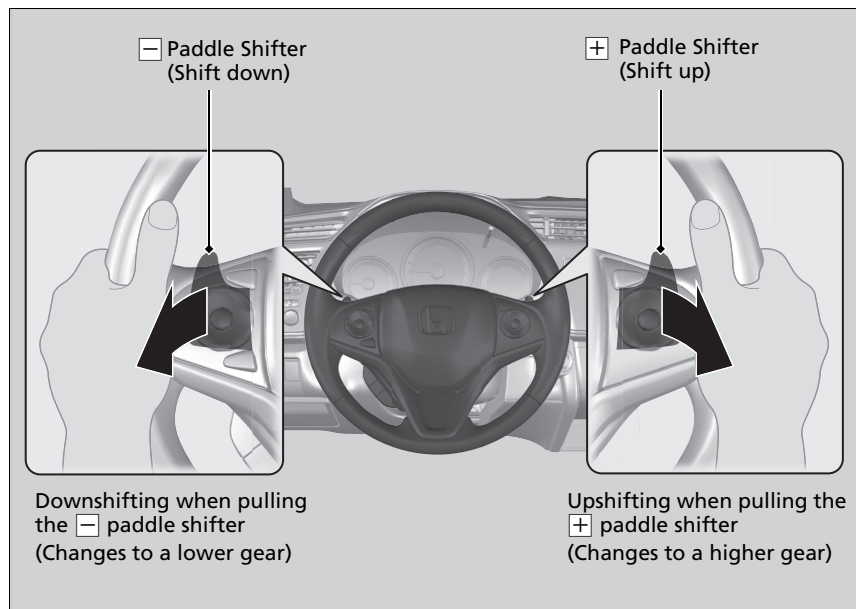
### ■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:

The vehicle will go into the sequential shift mode, and the **[M]** (sequential shift mode) indicator and gear position indicator will come on. At speeds of 10 km/h or less, the vehicle automatically shifts down into 1st gear. It will not automatically shift up, even if vehicle speed increases.

You can only pull away in 1st or 2nd gear.

When switching out of the sequential shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the sequential shift mode is cancelled, the sequential shift mode indicator and gear position indicator go off.

## ■ Sequential Shift Mode Operation



## ►► Sequential Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single gear change.

To change gears continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next gear.

If the gear position indicator blinks when you try to shift up or down, this means your vehicle speed is not in its allowable gear shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

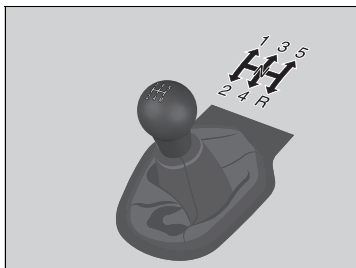
## Manual transmission models

# Shifting

## Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

## Reverse Lockout

Your vehicle's lockout mechanism stops you from accidentally shifting into **[R]** from the 5th gear. Always shift to **[N]** first, then to **[R]**.

### Shifting

#### NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

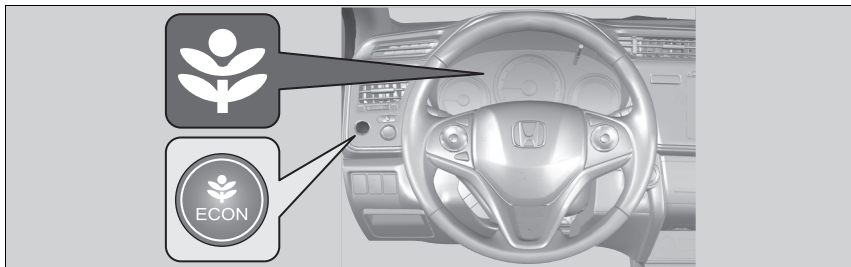
#### NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.



## ECON Button\*



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you to improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\* and cruise control\*.

### » ECON Button\*

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

## Cruise Control \*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h ~

### Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you



### How to use

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



**CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel.**

Cruise control is ready to use.



### ⚠ Cruise Control \*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

### Manual transmission models

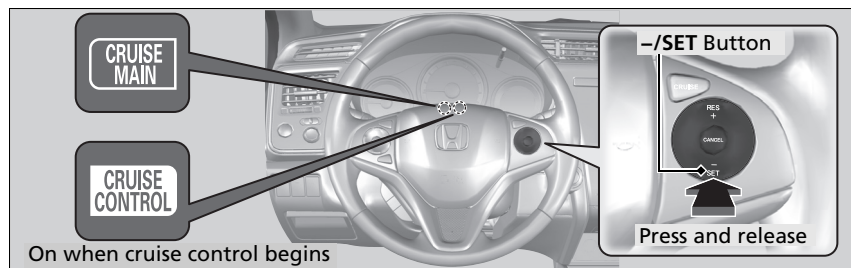
When the engine speed slow down, try to downshift. You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

### Models with ECON system

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

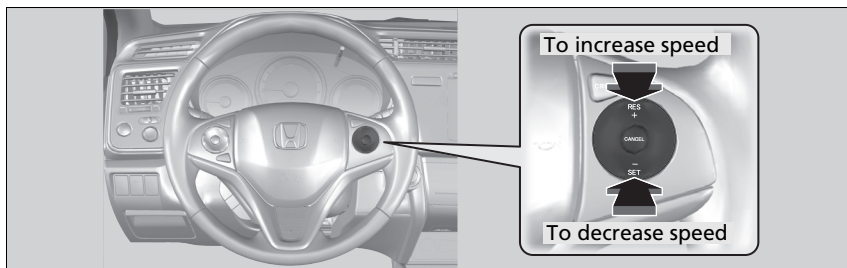


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

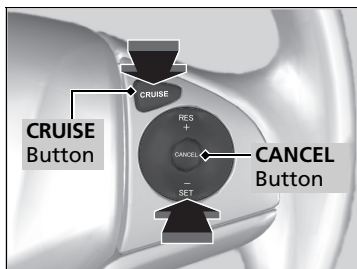
## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

### Manual transmission models

- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

## ▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

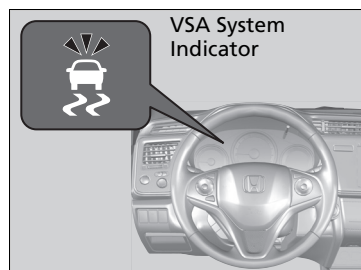
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System\*

VSA helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System\*

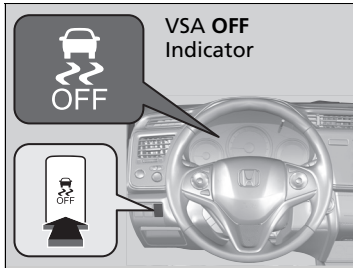
The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.


The Main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

## ■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System\*

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  (VSA **OFF**) button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

\* Not available on all models

Taiwanese models

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Monitors tyre revolutions while you are driving over 30 km/h. When there is a change in tyre revolutions, the system detects a decrease in tyre pressure.

### TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the TPMS:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

🔧 **Checking Tyres** P. 396

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The ignition switch is in ON **II**.

### 🔧 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

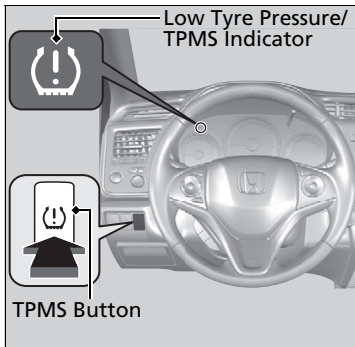
🔧 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 396

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.



Press and hold the TPMS button until the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the TPMS button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

#### ▣ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

- TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



Cambodian, Laotian and Middle Eastern models

## Deflation Warning System (DWS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Monitors tyre revolutions while you are driving over 30 km/h. When there is a change in tyre revolutions, the system detects a decrease in tyre pressure.


### Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

 **Checking Tyres** P. 396

### » Deflation Warning System (DWS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.


Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 396

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.

**Manual transmission models**

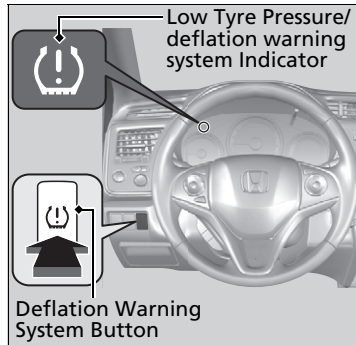
- The parking brake is applied.

**Continuously variable transmission models**

- The shift lever is in **P**.

**All models**

- The ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.



Press and hold the deflation warning system button until the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the deflation warning system button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

►► Deflation Warning System (DWS)

- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.
- During this period, if the ignition\*1 is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

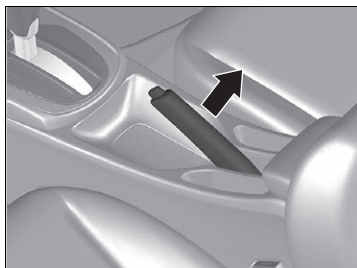
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Brake System

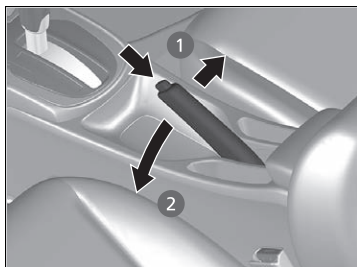
### Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



#### To apply:

Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.



#### To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.

### Parking Brake

#### NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at the front, and drum brakes in the rear wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system\* increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

🔧 **Brake Assist System** P. 345

🔧 **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 344

## 🔧 Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

\* Not available on all models

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

### ►► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS: You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow. The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Models with Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

## Brake Assist System

### ■ Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

#### ■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

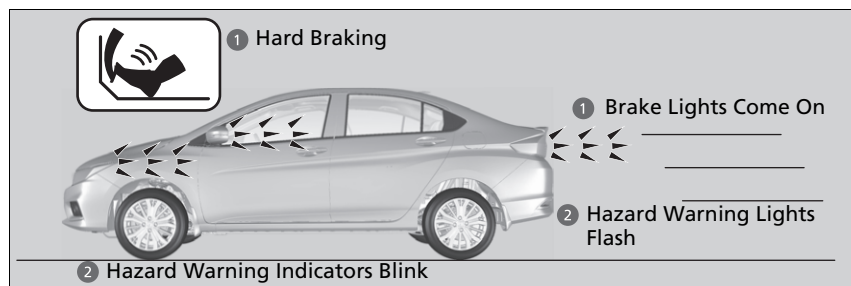
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## Models with Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

# Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

## ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

## » Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.

### Continuously variable transmission models

3. Move the shift lever from **D** to **P**.

### Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **1** or **R**.

### All models

4. Turn off the engine.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

### ⌘ Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### ⌘ When Stopped

#### Continuously variable transmission models

#### NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

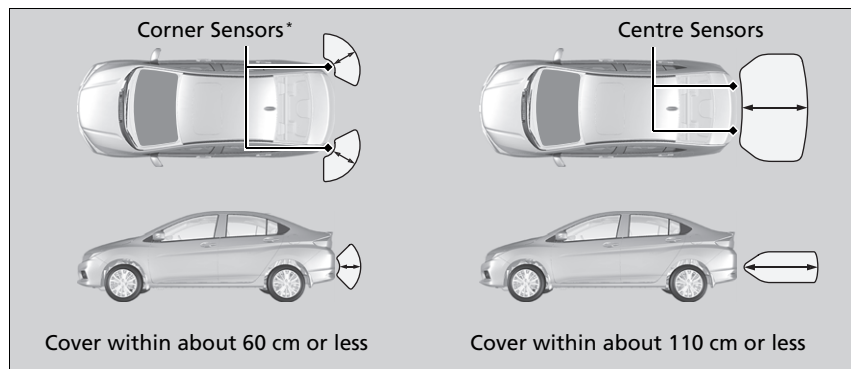
In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.



## Parking Sensor System \*

The rear corner\* and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper lets you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ►► Parking Sensor System \*

Even the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

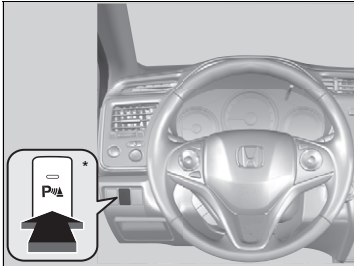
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

## ■ Parking Sensor System On and Off\*



With the ignition switch is ON **[II]**\*<sup>1</sup>, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

### ■ Manual transmission models

You also need to release the parking brake.

## ▣ Parking Sensor System On and Off\*

When you turn the ignition switch is ON **[II]**\*<sup>1</sup>, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

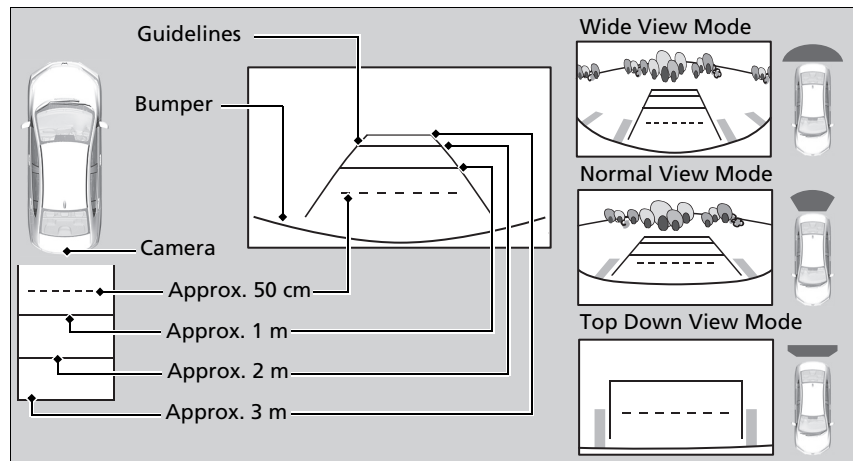
■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle	
	Corner Sensors*	Centre Sensors
Moderate	—	About 110-60 cm
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Select the mode to switch the angle.

If the last used viewing mode is Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into **R**. If Top View was last used, Wide mode is selected.

### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before reversing. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 250

#### Fixed Guideline

**On:** Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### Dynamic Guideline

**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**Off:** Guidelines do not move.

\* Not available on all models

## Fuel Information

### ■ Fuel recommendation

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

### ■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 litres

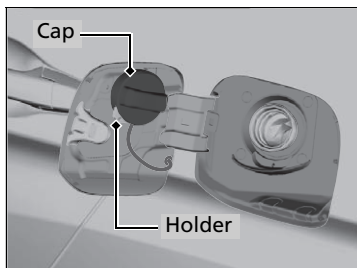
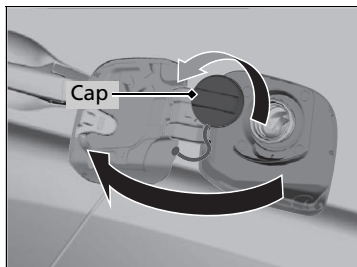
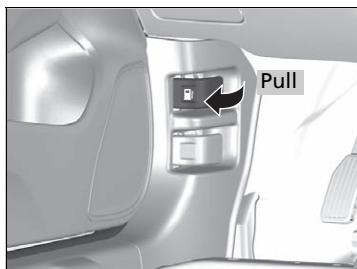
### » Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.  
▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.  
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.  
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### How to Refuel

## ⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of change in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 361

#### Models with Maintenance Reminder

Check the Maintenance Reminder and have maintenance performed on your vehicle.

➤ **Maintenance Reminder**\* P. 359

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended by the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

#### GCC country models

You can improve the mileage and reduce the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions of your vehicle by following these tips:

- Operate your vehicle correctly.
- Regularly maintain your vehicle.
- Maintain proper tyre pressure.
- Avoid carrying excessive loads.
- Adopt efficient driving techniques, such as driving at lower speeds, reducing idling time, and avoiding aggressive driving.

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## **Before Performing Maintenance**

Inspection and Maintenance .....	356
Safety When Performing Maintenance ....	357
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	358

<b>Maintenance Reminder*</b> .....	359
------------------------------------	-----

<b>Maintenance Schedule</b> .....	361
-----------------------------------	-----

## **Maintenance Under the Bonnet**

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ...	372
Opening the Bonnet .....	373
Recommended Engine Oil .....	374
Oil Check .....	375
Adding Engine Oil .....	376

Engine Coolant .....	377
Transmission Fluid .....	379
Brake/Clutch * Fluid .....	380
Refilling Window Washer Fluid .....	381
Fuel Filter .....	381

<b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> .....	382
------------------------------------	-----

<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper</b>	
---------------------------------------	--

<b>Blades</b> .....	394
---------------------	-----

## **Checking and Maintaining Tyres**

Checking Tyres .....	396
Wear Indicators .....	398
Tyre Service Life .....	398
Tyre and Wheel Replacement .....	399

Tyre Rotation .....	400
Snow Traction Devices .....	401

<b>Battery</b> .....	403
----------------------	-----

## **Remote Transmitter Care**

Replacing the Button Battery .....	406
------------------------------------	-----

<b>Heating* and Cooling System*/Climate</b>	
<b>Control System* Maintenance</b> .....	408

## **Cleaning**

Interior Care .....	410
Exterior Care .....	412

<b>Accessories and Modifications</b> .....	415
--	-----

\* Not available on all models



### Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 361

#### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

##### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

##### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake/Clutch\* Fluid** P. 380
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 396
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 382
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 394

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---


The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

## Mexican models only

When your vehicle's travel distance has been accumulated, you will see a message that reminds you it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 361

## When Required Maintenance Approaches

The maintenance required indicator flashes or stays on every time you turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

### ■ Maintenance Required Indicator



#### ■ The indicator blinks for ten seconds:

Your vehicle's accumulated distance is between 8,500 km and 10,000 km.

- ▶ Your vehicle should be inspected and serviced soon.

#### ■ The indicator stays on:

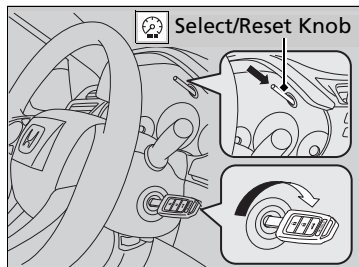
Your vehicle's accumulated distance has exceeded 10,000 km without the scheduled maintenance performed.


- ▶ Have the scheduled maintenance performed as soon as possible.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Resetting the Indicator



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup> or ACCESSORY **I**.
2. Turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup> while pressing and holding the  (Select/Reset) knob.
3. Hold the knob for approximately 10 seconds until the indicator resets.

## ► Resetting the Indicator

The dealer will reset the maintenance required indicator after completing the scheduled maintenance services. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the indicator yourself.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Bahraini, Kuwaiti, Mexican, Omani, Qatari, Saudi Arabian and United Arab Emirates models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe* <sup>4</sup>	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe* <sup>4</sup>	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Clean air cleaner element	Dry	Every 10,000km, but No clean at replace									
Replace air cleaner element* <sup>1</sup>		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance* <sup>2</sup>		Every 120,000 km									
Replace fuel filter* <sup>3</sup>					•				•		

\*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet.

\*2: Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*3: Refer to page 381 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

\*4: Refer to page 364 for replacement information under severe conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	MT Normal	Every 120,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe* <sup>1</sup>			•			•			•	
	CVT		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Check parking brake adjustment		•	•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									

\*1: Refer to page 364 for replacement information under severe conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120

**Visually inspect the following items:**

Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Suspension components										
Driveshaft boots										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid										
Exhaust system										
Fuel lines and connections										



If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B and D

#### ►► Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.

B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.

C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.

D. With a trailer towing\*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.

E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

**Bahraini, Kuwaiti, Omani, Qatari, Saudi Arabian and United Arab Emirates models**

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe* <sup>3</sup>	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe* <sup>3</sup>	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance* <sup>1</sup>		Every 120,000 km									
Replace fuel filter* <sup>2</sup>					•				•		
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	MT Normal	Every 120,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe* <sup>3</sup>			•	•		•			•	
	CVT		•		•		•		•		•

\*1: Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*2: Refer to page 381 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

\*3: Refer to page 367 for replacement information under severe conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20 12	40 24	60 36	80 48	100 60	120 72	140 84	160 96	180 108	200 120
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Check parking brake adjustment		•	•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Battery electrolyte level											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid											
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B and D

#### ⌘ Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a trailer towing\*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Mexican models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe* <sup>3</sup>	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe* <sup>3</sup>	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance* <sup>1</sup>		Every 120,000 km									
Replace fuel filter* <sup>2</sup>					•				•		
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	MT Normal	Every 120,000 km or 6 years									
	Severe* <sup>3</sup>			•			•			•	
	CVT		•		•		•		•		•

\*1: Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*2: Refer to page 381 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

\*3: Refer to page 370 for replacement information under severe conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Check parking brake adjustment	•	•		•		•		•		•	
Replace dust and pollen filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km										
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid											
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B and D

#### ►► Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.

B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.

C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.

D. With a trailer towing\*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.

E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

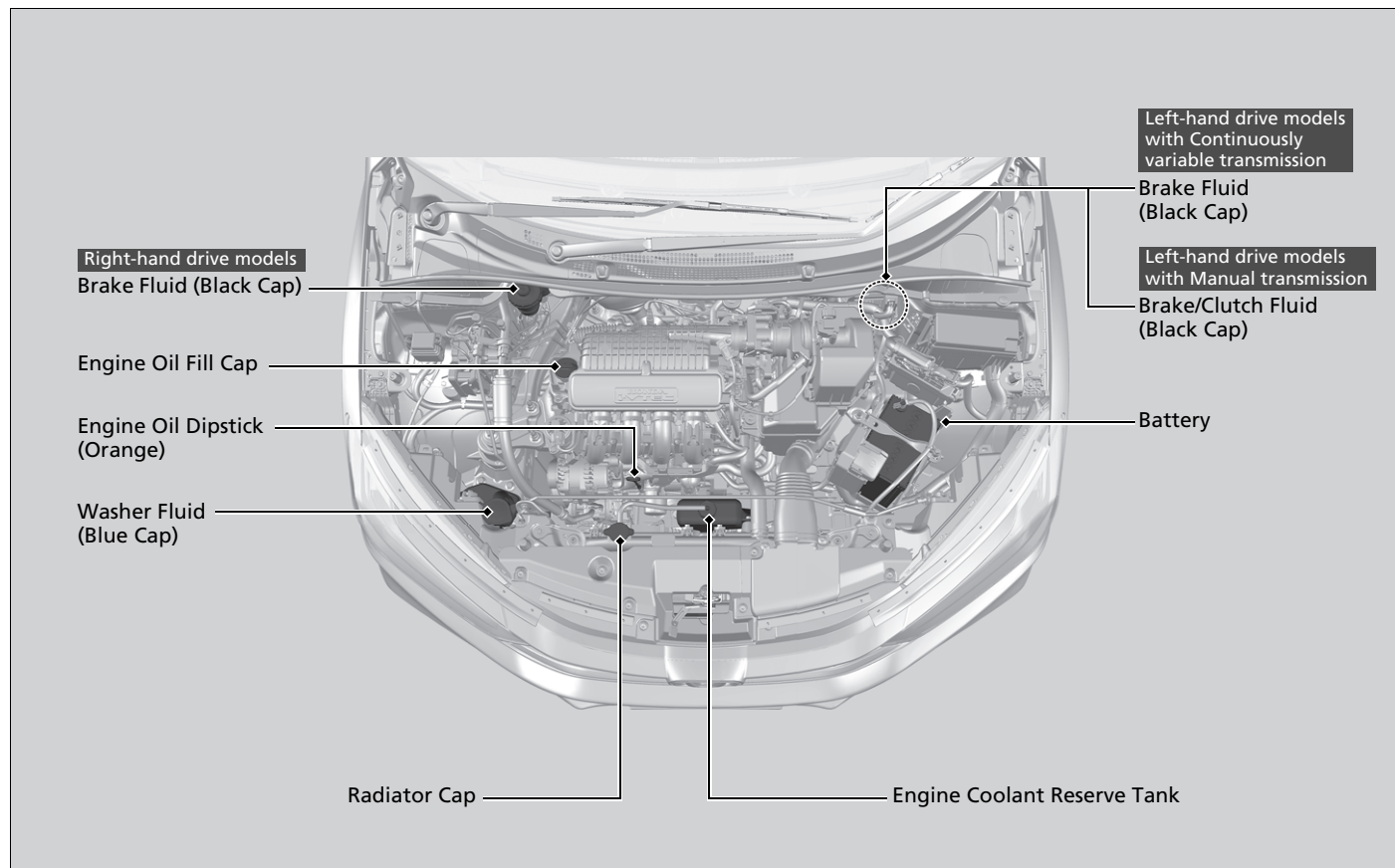
# Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

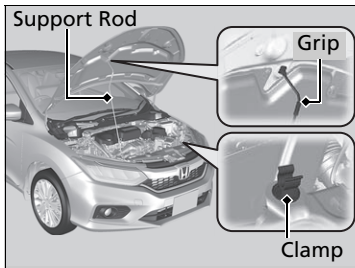
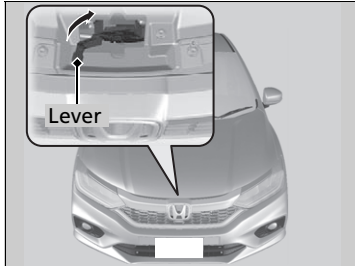
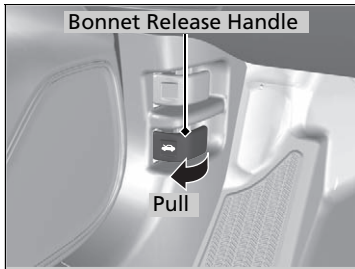
Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		



## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



## Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.  
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

### Opening the Bonnet

#### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised.  
The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

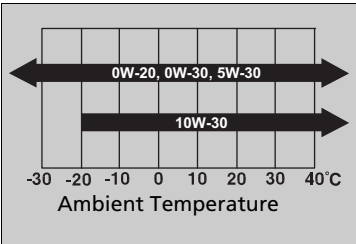
When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

# Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**



Use a Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

0W-20 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

## Recommended Engine Oil

### Engine Oil Additives

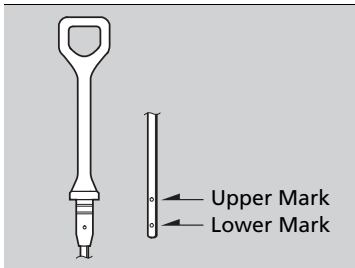
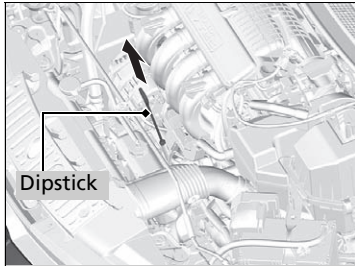
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



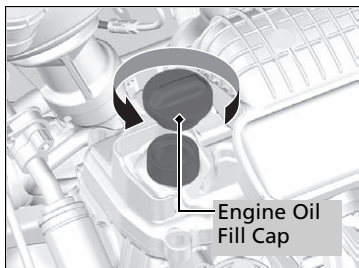
1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### ► Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

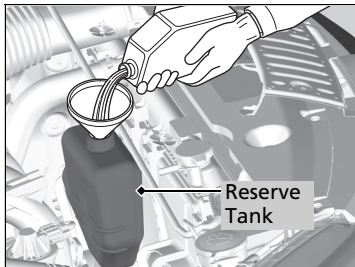
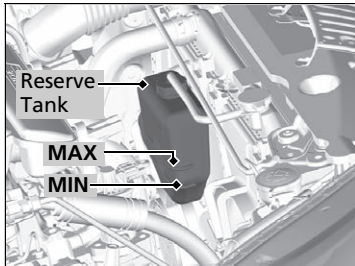
## Engine Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.

2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

► If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### Engine Coolant

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

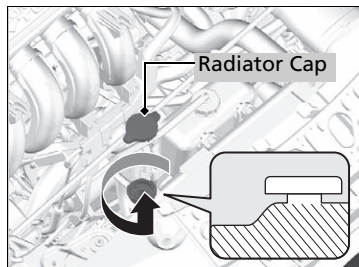
If temperatures consistently below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

## Radiator



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## Radiator

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Transmission Fluid

### ■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

#### Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.  
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 361

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

### ■ Manual Transmission Fluid

#### Specified fluid: Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.  
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 361

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

#### ⌘ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

##### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

#### ⌘ Manual Transmission Fluid

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0 W-20 or 5 W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

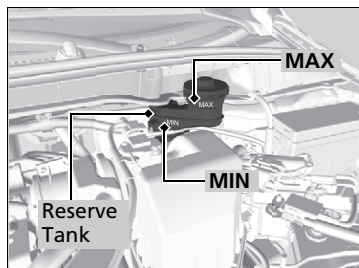


## Brake/Clutch \* Fluid

**Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4**

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

#### ■ Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

### ►► Brake/Clutch \* Fluid

#### ■ NOTICE

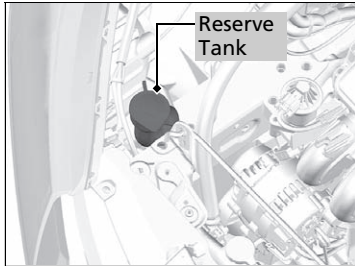
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow reservoir.

## Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or 2 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

### ⌘ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

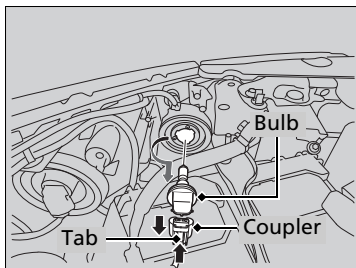
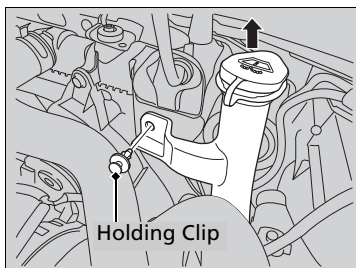
## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<b>High beam headlight:</b>	<b>60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*</b> <b>LED type*</b>
<b>Low beam headlight:</b>	<b>55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*</b> <b>LED type*</b>

### High Beam Headlight

#### Models with halogen headlights



#### Right side

1. Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the window washer reserve tank.

#### Both sides

2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

#### Headlight Bulbs

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot or tow\* a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

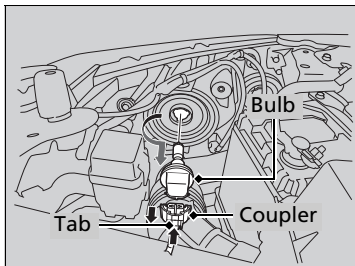
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

#### Models with LED headlights

High beam and low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Low Beam Headlight

### Models with halogen headlights

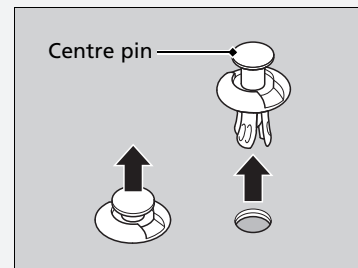


1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

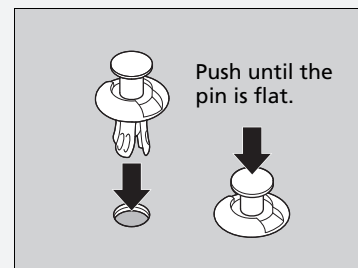
### Headlight Bulbs

#### Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



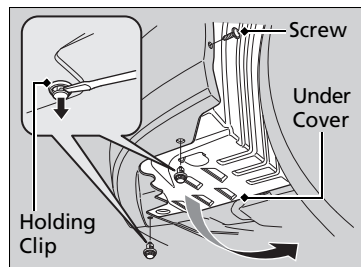
Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



## Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)\*  
LED type\***



1. Remove the screw using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver.
2. Pull down the under cover.

### Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

#### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

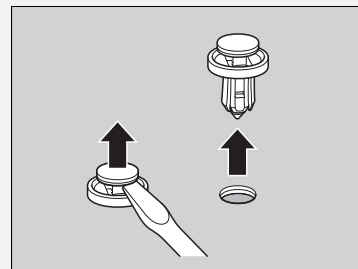
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

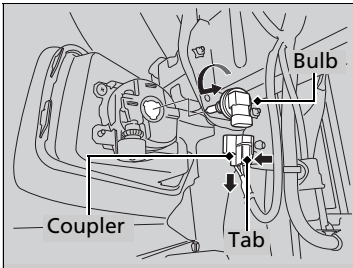
#### Models with LED fog lights

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

#### Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.

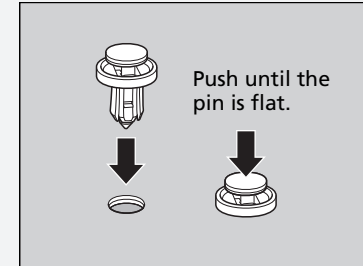




3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

#### Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.

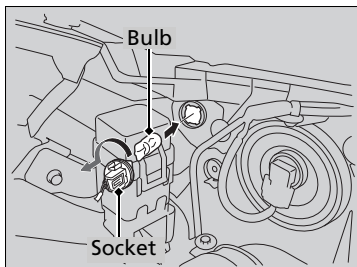


\* Not available on all models

## Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position Lights

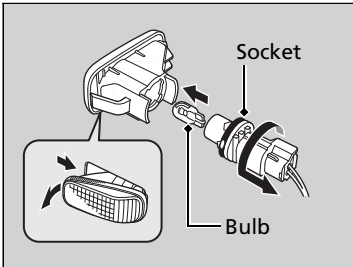
Position lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light Bulbs

### Fender type

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

### Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W (Amber)



1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly towards the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### Door mirror type

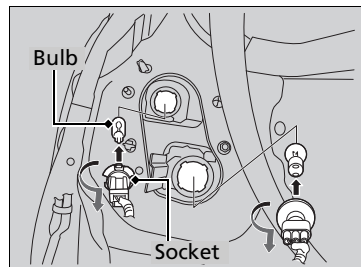
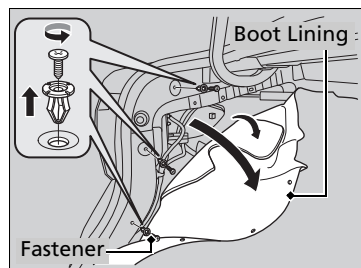
Side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



## Brake/Taillight, Rear Side Marker Light and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<b>Brake/Taillight:</b>	<b>21/5W*</b> <b>LED Type*</b>
<b>Rear Side Marker Light:</b>	<b>LED Type*</b>
<b>Rear Turn Signal Light:</b>	<b>21W*</b> <b>21W (Amber)*</b>



1. Remove the screws from its centre of each fastener using a Phillips-head screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### ► Brake/Taillight, Rear Side Marker Light and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

#### Models with LED brake/taillights

Brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

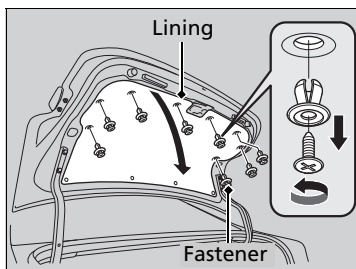
#### Models with LED rear side marker lights

Rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Back-Up Light, Taillight and Rear Fog Light\* Bulbs

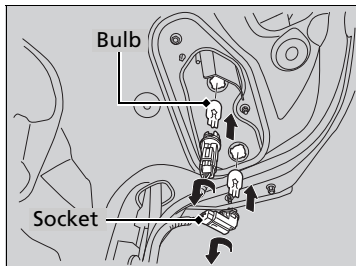
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

<b>Back-Up Light:</b>	<b>16 W</b>
<b>Taillight:</b>	<b>5 W*</b>
	<b>LED Type*</b>
<b>Rear Fog Light:</b>	<b>21 W</b>



### Models with boot lid lining

1. Remove each screw from the centre of its fastener using a Phillips-head screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



### All models

2. Remove the coupler from the socket.
3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### ►► Back-Up Light, Taillight and Rear Fog Light\* Bulbs

#### Models with LED taillights

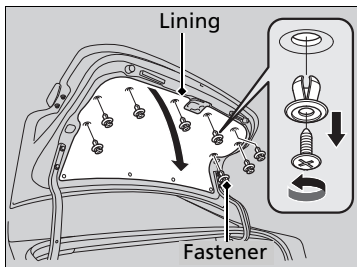
Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

\* Not available on all models

## Rear Licence Plate Light Bulbs

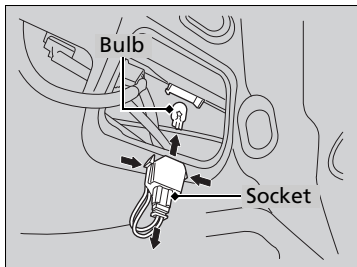
When replacing, use the following bulb.

### Rear Licence Plate Light: 5 W



#### Models with boot lid lining

1. Remove each screw from the centre of its fastener using a Phillips-head screwdriver, then pull the lining back.



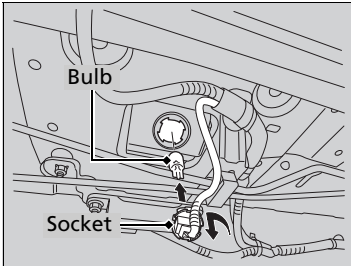
#### All models

2. Remove the licence plate light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**High-Mount Brake Light:** 21 W\*  
LED Type\*



1. Open the boot.
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### » High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

#### Models with LED high-mount brake light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

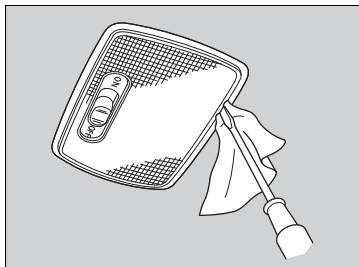
\* Not available on all models

## Other Light Bulbs

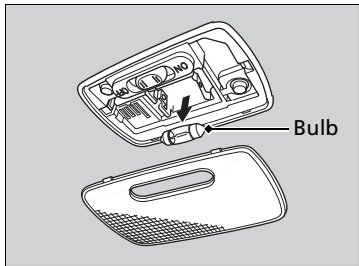
### ■ Ceiling Light Bulb \*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

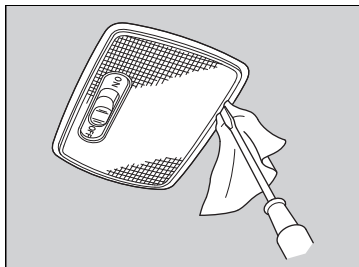


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

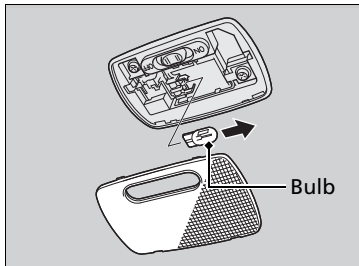
### ■ Ceiling Light Bulb \*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

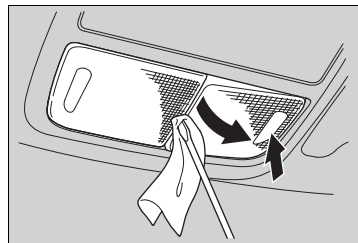


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

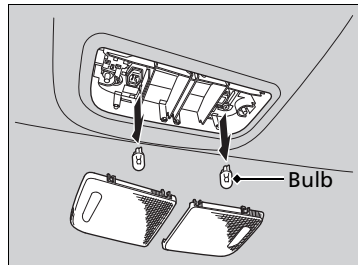
### ■ Map Light Bulbs \*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

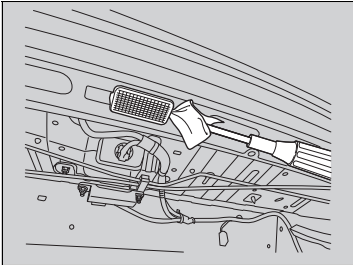


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

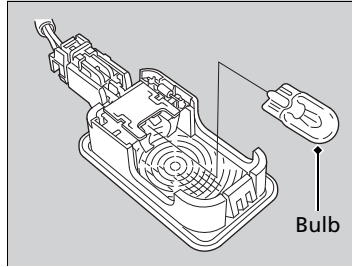
## ■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Boot Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



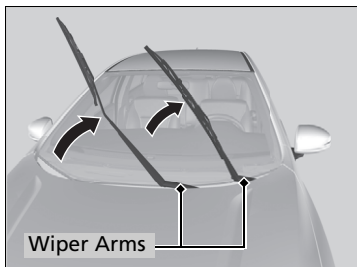
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

# Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

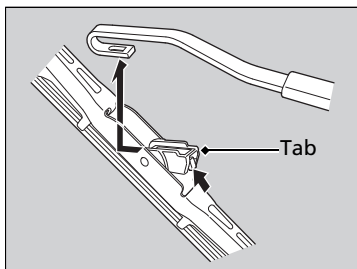
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

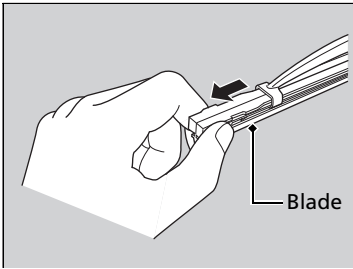


2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

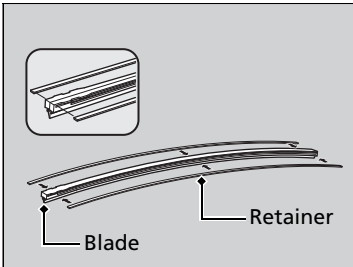
### Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.
  - Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
  - The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.
7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.



## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1-2 psi) per month.

### » Checking Tyres

#### **WARNING**

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

🔧 **Wear Indicators** P. 398

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

## » Checking Tyres

### Taiwanese models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

🔧 **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**  
P. 338

### Middle Eastern and Southeast Asian models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the Deflation Warning System.

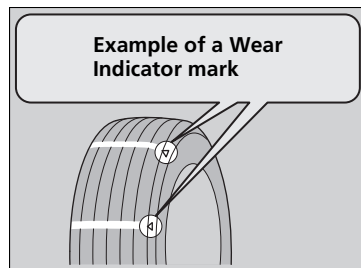
🔧 **Deflation Warning System (DWS)** P. 340

## High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	175/65R15 84T 185/55R16 83H
Pressure	Front: 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 35 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 33 psi)

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)\* system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ⚠ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

\* Not available on all models

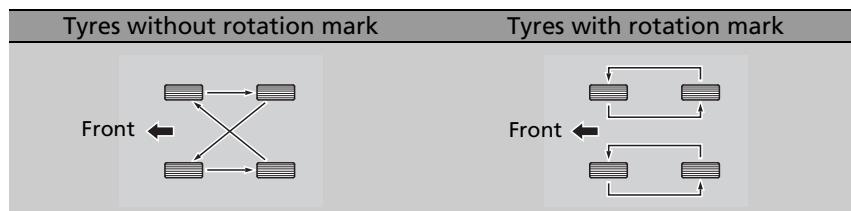
## Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

### ■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

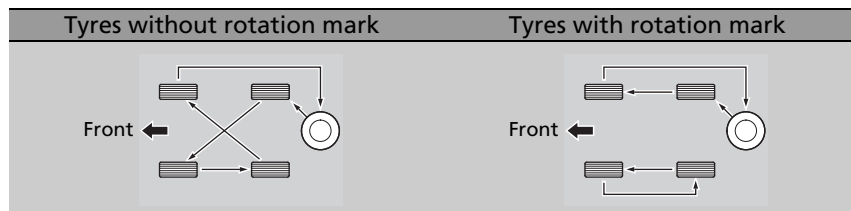
#### Models with a compact/temporary spare tyre

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



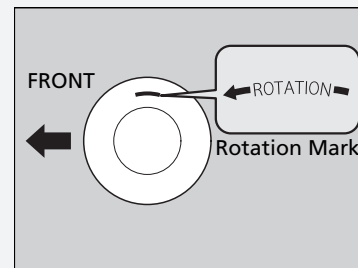
#### Models with a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.



#### ► Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

#### ► Taiwanese models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

► **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**  
P. 338

#### ► Middle Eastern and Southeast Asian models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the Deflation Warning System.

► **Deflation Warning System (DWS)** P. 340

# Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
175/65R15 84T	RUD-matic classic 4716674
185/55R16 83H	RUD-matic classic 48479

\*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

## ❧ Snow Traction Devices

### ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

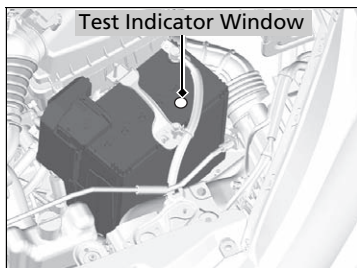
Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

#### » Snow Traction Devices

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the Battery



Test Indicator Window

### Models with test indicator window on the battery

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window.

### Models without test indicator window on the battery

Check the battery condition by looking at the fluid level. The upper and lower level marks are shown on the battery case. If the fluid level is below the lower mark, contact a dealer.

### All models

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 110

### Battery

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**



## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### » Battery

#### Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

#### Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

## Battery Label



### ▶▶ Battery Label

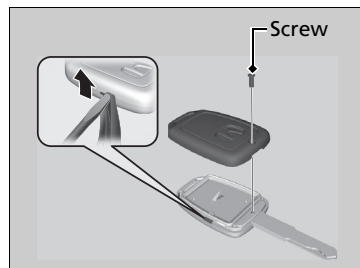
#### **DANGER**

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

## Replacing the Button Battery

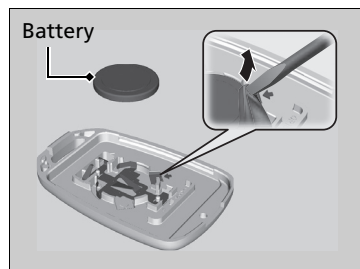
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

### ■ Ignition Keys with Remote Transmitter\*



#### **Battery type: CR1620**

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



### ▶▶ Replacing the Button Battery

## ⚠ WARNING

### CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

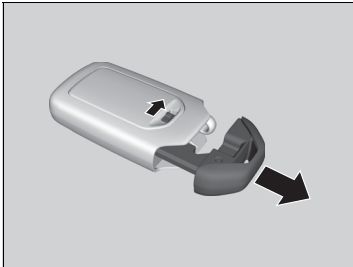
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

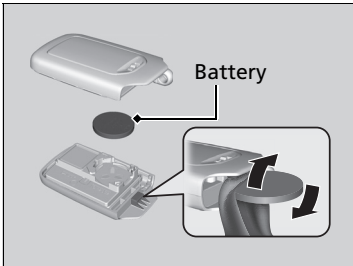
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

## ■ Keyless Remote \*



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.  
 ► Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



\* Not available on all models

## Dust and Pollen Filter

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

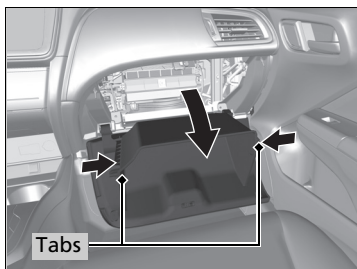
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 361

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



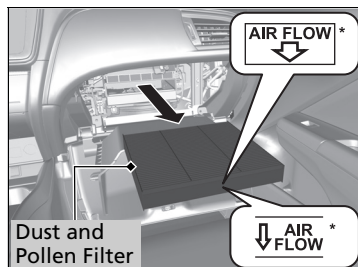
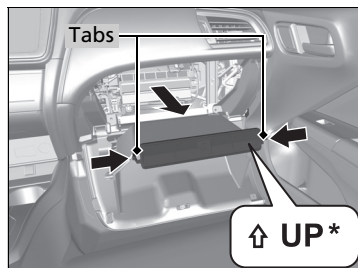
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

### » Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.

5. Remove the filter.

6. Install a new filter.

► Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

#### ►► Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

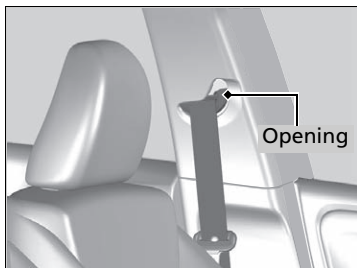
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

#### Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

#### Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

## ■ Floor Mats\*

The driver's floor mat hook over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## ▣ Floor Mats\*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

## ▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

\* Not available on all models



## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

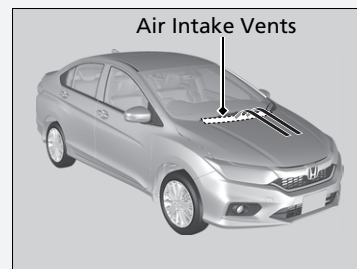
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Remove the audio antenna\*.
- 🔧 **Audio Antenna\*** P. 194
- Fold in the door mirrors.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### 🔧 Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels \*

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## » Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## » Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses


The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.  
 **Fuses** P. 440
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

### Accessories and Modifications

## WARNING

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

<b>Tools</b>	
Types of Tools.....	418
<b>If a Tyre Goes Flat</b>	
Changing a Flat Tyre .....	419
<b>Engine Does Not Start</b>	
Checking the Engine .....	427
Model with keyless access system	
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ..	428
Model with keyless access system	
Emergency Engine Stop .....	429
<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	430
<b>Shift Lever Does Not Move</b> .....	432

<b>Overheating</b>	
How to Handle Overheating.....	433
<b>Indicator, Coming On/Blinking</b>	
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On .....	435
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On .....	435
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks .....	436
If the Brake System (Red) Indicator Comes On .....	436
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On .....	437

## Middle Eastern and Southeast Asian models

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks .....	438
--	-----

## Taiwanese models

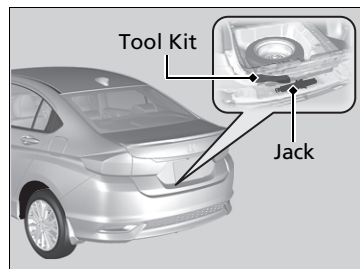
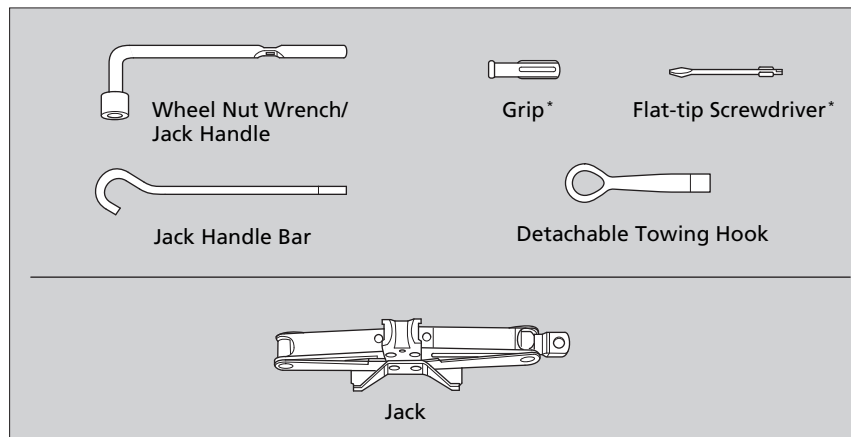
If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks .....	439
--	-----

## Fuses

Fuse Locations .....	440
Inspecting and Changing Fuses.....	447

<b>Emergency Towing</b> .....	448
-------------------------------	-----

## Types of Tools



### Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

## Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre\*/temporary spare tyre\*/full-size spare tyre\*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

### Continuously variable transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **P**.

### Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **R**.

### All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact/temporary spare\* precautions:

#### Compact spare tyre

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure. Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 60 psi)

#### Temporary spare tyre

Check the air pressure of the 175/65R15 size temporary spare tyre every time you check the other full-size tyres. It should be inflated to the recommended air pressure on the label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

When driving with the compact/temporary spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact/temporary spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact/temporary spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact/temporary spare tyre.

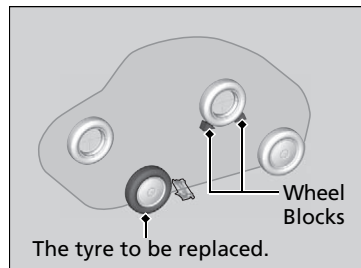
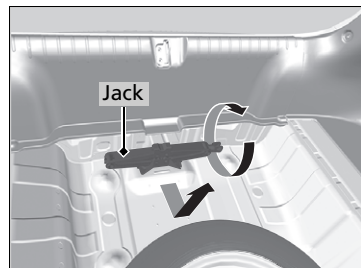
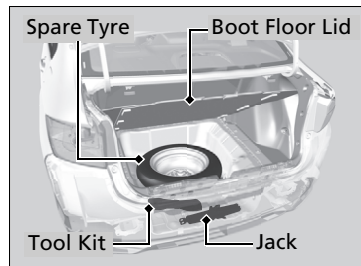
If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact/temporary spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

*Continued*



## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the boot floor lid.
2. Take the tool kit and jack out of the boot.
  - Remove the jack by turning the jack's end bracket to the left to loosen it.
3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.
4. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

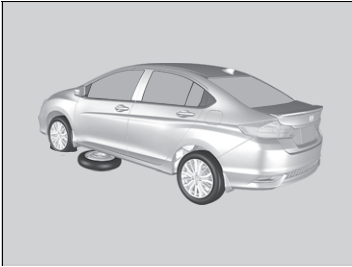
## ► Changing a Flat Tyre

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

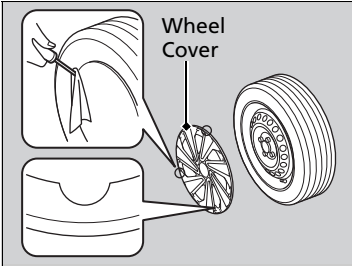
### NOTICE

Do not use more than one compact/temporary spare tyre at the same time.

The compact/temporary spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact/temporary spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

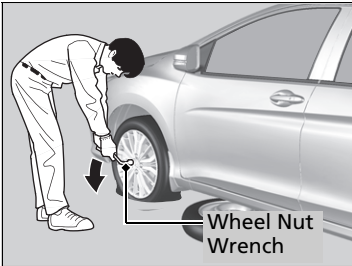


5. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



**Models with wheel cover**

6. Remove the wheel cover by prying on the edge of the wheel cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



**All models**

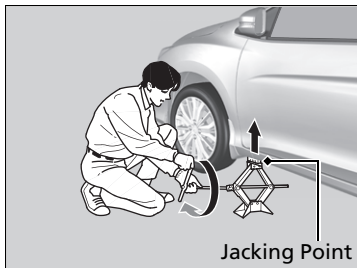
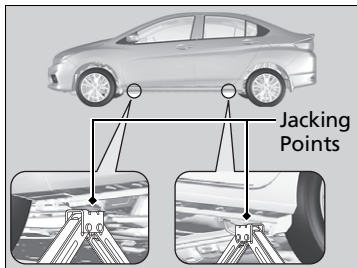
7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

► Changing a Flat Tyre

**NOTICE**

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

## ■ How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
  - Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

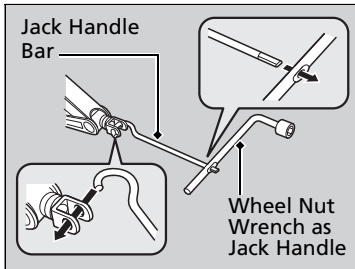
## ►► How to Set Up the Jack

### ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

#### How to Set Up the Jack

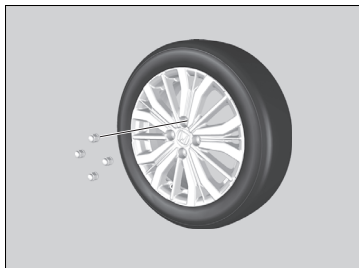
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

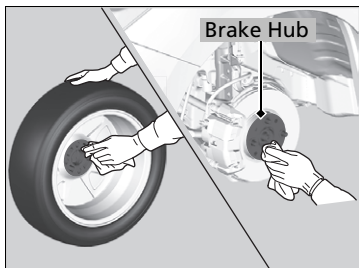
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

## ■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

## ►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

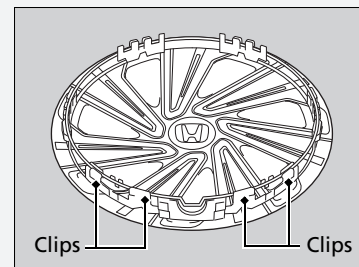
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

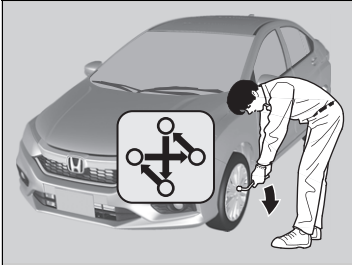
### Models with wheel cover

Do not attempt to forcibly pry the wheel cover off with a screwdriver or other tool.

### Models with wheel cover and full-size spare tyre

Make sure the wire support ring is hooked into the clips around the edge of the wheel cover.





5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

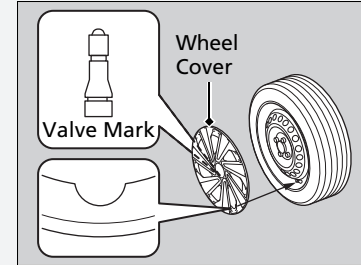
**Wheel nut torque:**

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

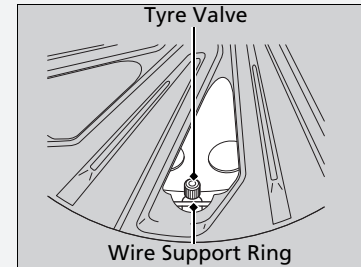
► Replacing the Flat Tyre

**Models with wheel cover and full-size spare tyre**

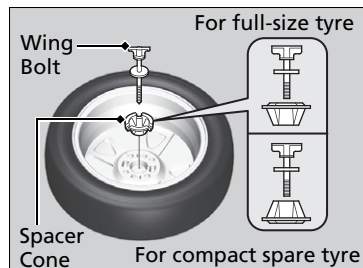
Align the valve mark on the wheel cover to the tyre valve on the wheel, then install the wheel cover.



Make sure the wire support ring is on the outer side of the tyre valve as shown.



## ■ Storing the Flat Tyre



### Models with aluminium wheel

1. Remove the centre cap.


### Models with compact spare tyre

2. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt.

### All models

3. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
4. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
5. Securely store the jack and put the wheel nut wrench back in the tool kit. Store the tool kit in the boot.

## ■ Deflation Warning System/TPMS and the Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the  indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometers, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on, but this is normal.

Calibrate the deflation warning system/TPMS when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

► **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 340

► **TPMS Calibration** P. 338

## ►► Storing the Flat Tyre

### ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.  
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

»Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.

» Jump Starting P. 430

Starter condition	Checklist
<b>Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.</b> The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<b>Check brightness of the interior lights.</b> Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all » <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 403</li><li>• If the interior lights come on normally » <b>Fuses</b> P. 440</li></ul>
<b>The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.</b> There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<b>Review the engine start procedure.</b> Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. » <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 317, 320
	<b>Check the immobilizer system indicator.</b> When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. » <b>Immobilizer System</b> P. 136
	<b>Check the fuel level.</b> There should be enough fuel in the tank. » <b>Fuel Gauge*</b> P. 103, 106
	<b>Check the fuse.</b> Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. » <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 447
	<b>If the problem continues:</b> » <b>Emergency Towing</b> P. 448

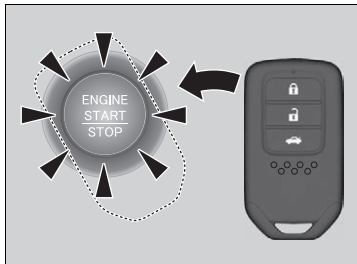
\* Not available on all models



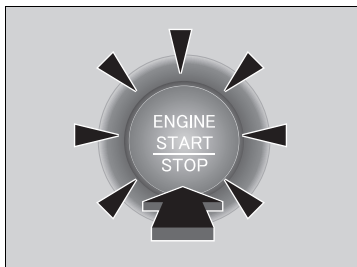
Models with keyless access system

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **KEY BATT** message appears on the information display, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
  - If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with keyless access system

## Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button two or three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

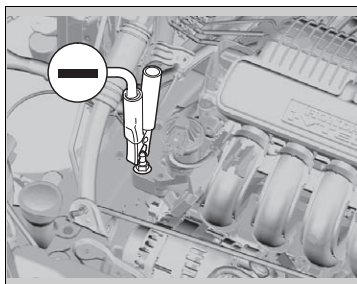
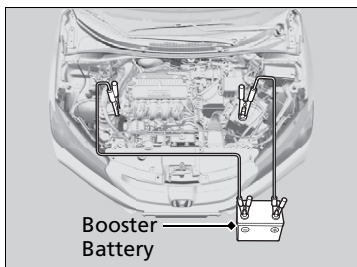
The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

### Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - When using a vehicle charger, set the voltage to 15 volt or less.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

## Jump Starting

### **⚠ WARNING**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

### **NOTICE**

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

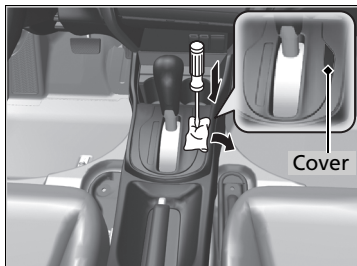
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

## Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

### Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

#### Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

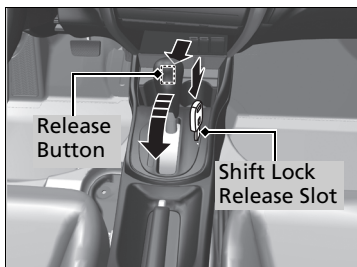
#### All models

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.

► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The high temperature indicator comes on or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

#### ► No steam or spray present:

Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

#### ► Steam or spray is present:

Turn off the engine and wait until steam goes away. Then, open the bonnet.

### How to Handle Overheating

## ⚠ WARNING

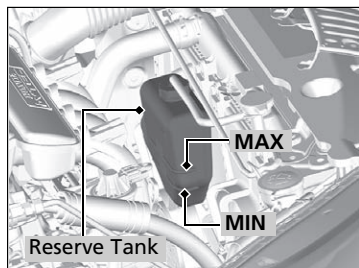
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the high temperature indicator on may damage the engine.

## ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature indicator goes off.
  - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the high temperature indicator.

If the high temperature indicator is off, resume driving. If it stays on, contact a dealer for repairs.

## ►► How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

### If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



#### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

#### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

#### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
  - ▶ Oil Check.
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
  - ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
  - ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

🔧 **Oil Check** P. 375

### If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



#### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

#### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ⚠ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

##### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

#### ⚠ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

\* Not available on all models



## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least ten minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### ►► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System (Red) Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

### ►► If the Brake System (Red) Indicator Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

---



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Middle Eastern and Southeast Asian models

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated.

If there is a problem with the deflation warning system or the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 340

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to blink, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after driving for a few kilometers.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system after a full-size tyre is reinstalled.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 340

🔧 If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Taiwanese models

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

► Calibrate the TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

➤ **TPMS Calibration** P. 338

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to blink, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after driving for a few kilometers.

► Calibrate the TPMS after a full-size tyre is reinstalled.

➤ **TPMS Calibration** P. 338

### ► If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

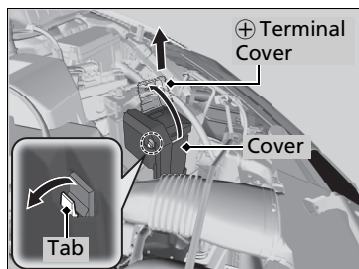
## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup> and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

There are two fuse boxes in the engine compartment.

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type A)

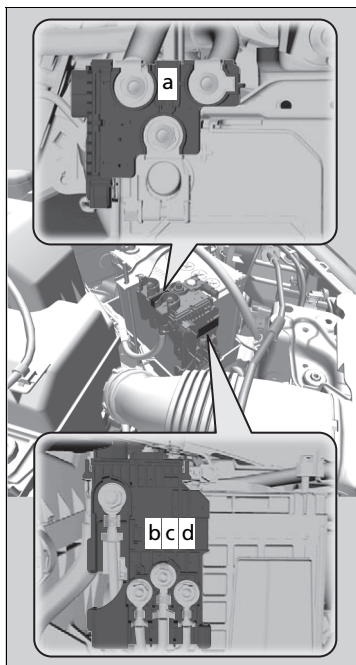
Located near the ⊕ terminal on the battery.







1. Open the ⊕ terminal cover.
2. Remove the cover by pulling the tab as shown.

Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

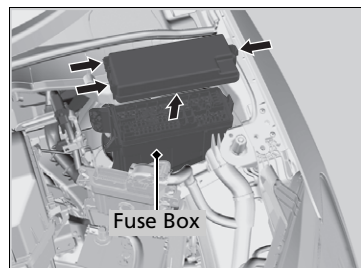


■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		MAIN	100 A
b		RB MAIN 1	70 A
c		RB MAIN 2	80 A
d		CAP MAIN	70 A

## ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side. Push the tabs to open the box.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

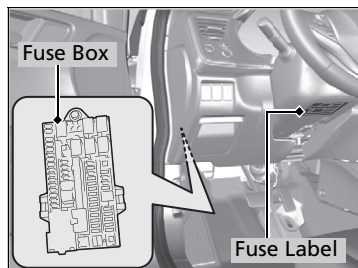
## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2	—	(15 A)
3	Hazard	10 A
4	DBW	15 A
5	Wiper	(30 A)
6	Stop	10 A
7	IGP	15 A
8	IG COIL	15 A
9	—	—
10	—	(20 A)
11	—	—
12	Main Fan Motor	30 A
13	ST MAGNETIC SW	(30 A)
14	MG CLUTCH	7.5 A
15	—	(7.5 A)
16	SUB FAN	(20 A)
17	Washer*	(15 A)
18	Horn	10 A
19	Fog Light	(20 A)
20	DRL	(7.5 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	BUCKUP MAIN	15 A
22	Interior Lights	(7.5 A)
23	—	—
24	—	—
25	STRLD	(7.5 A)
26	ST MG	(7.5 A)
27	—	—
28	—	(7.5 A)
29	BACK UP	(10 A)
30	IGP LAF	(10 A)
31	IGPS	(7.5 A)
32	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

## Interior Fuse Box\*

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

## Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		FR FOG LT RLY OUT	(7.5 A)
b	—	—	—
1		Driver's Power Window	20 A
		Headlight Hi Beam Right* <sup>1</sup>	10 A
2		Headlight Hi Beam Right* <sup>2</sup>	20 A
3		ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
4		Auto Retra Mirror*	(7.5 A)
5		Small Light	10 A
6		Door Lock	20 A
		Accessory Power Socket (Console Compartment)* <sup>3</sup>	(20 A)
7		—* <sup>4</sup>	(20 A)
		Headlight Hi Beam Left* <sup>1</sup>	10 A
8	—	—* <sup>2</sup>	—
9		—	(20 A)
10	—	—	—
11	—	—	—
12	—	—	—

		Circuit Protected	Amps
		Accessory Power Socket (Console Compartment)* <sup>3</sup>	(20 A)
13		—* <sup>4</sup>	(20 A)
14		RR FOG	(10 A)
15	—	—	—
16		IG Main 2* <sup>3</sup>	30 A
	—	—* <sup>4</sup>	—
17	—	—	—
18	—	—	—
19		SMART* <sup>3</sup>	10 A
	—	—* <sup>4</sup>	—
20		RR DEF	(40 A)
21		HTR MTR	(40 A)
22		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
23		HTR MTR	(30 A)

\*1: Models with high durability type hi beam light
















\*2: Models with normal durability type hi beam light


















\*3: Models with keyless access system




\*4: Models without keyless access system

\* Not available on all models



		Circuit Protected	Amps
24		Power Window Main	40 A
25		IG Main* <sup>3</sup>	30 A
		IG Main* <sup>4</sup>	50 A
26		RR DEF	30 A (30 A)* <sup>5</sup>
27		EPS	60 A
28		Front Wiper Lo	7.5 A
29		—	(7.5 A)
30		A/C	(7.5 A)
31		BLOWER HI	(7.5 A)
	—	—* <sup>1</sup>	—
32		Left Headlight High Beam* <sup>2</sup>	10 A
	—	—* <sup>1</sup>	—
33		Right Headlight High Beam* <sup>2</sup>	10 A
34		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
35		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
36		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
37		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
38		ACC	7.5 A
39		Accessory Power Socket (Front)	20 A
40		Rear Left Power Window	20 A
41		Rear Right Power Window	20 A
42		Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
43		—	(10 A)
44		—	(10 A)
45		MISS SOL	(7.5 A)
46		Meter	7.5 A
47		WIPER/WASHER (RLY)* <sup>3</sup>	7.5 A
		WASHER* <sup>4</sup>	15 A
48		SRS	(10 A)
49		—	(7.5 A)
	—	—* <sup>3</sup>	—
50		Front Wiper* <sup>4</sup>	30 A
51		ST CUT RLY* <sup>3</sup>	(7.5 A)
		—* <sup>4</sup>	(7.5 A)
52		—	(10 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
53		VSA/ABS	(7.5 A)
54		ACG	(10 A)
55		Fuel Pump	(15 A)

\*1: Models with high durability type hi beam light

\*2: Models with normal durability type hi beam light

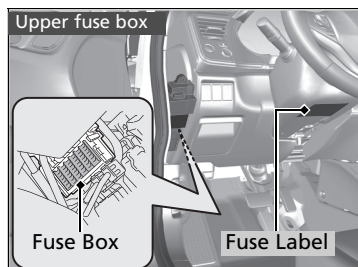
\*3: Models with keyless access system

\*4: Models without keyless access system

\*5: Models with rear ventilation without keyless access system

## Interior Fuse Box\*

Located under the dashboard.



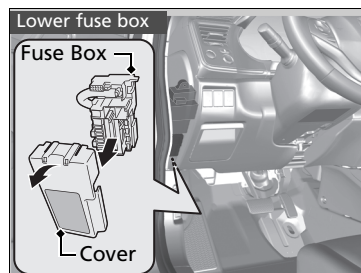
Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Door Lock	20 A
2	—	—	—
3		Smart	(10 A)
4		DR Side Door Unlock	10 A
5		AS Side Door Unlock	10 A
6		DR Door Unlock	(10 A)
7		DR Door Lock	(10 A)
8		DR Power Window	20 A
9		AS Power Window	20 A
10		RR L Power Window	20 A
11		RR R Power Window	20 A
12		DR Side Door Lock	10 A
13		AS Side Door Lock	10 A
14		Rear Fog*	(10 A)
15		Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
16		STS*	(7.5 A)
17		ACC Socket (Console)	(20 A)
18		—	20 A
19		Seat Heater*	(20 A)
20	—	—	—
21	—	—	—

		Circuit Protected	Amps
22		Washer	15 A
23		—	(10 A)
24		A/C	7.5 A
25		Daytime Running Lights*	(7.5 A)
26		Starter	(7.5 A)
27		ABS/VSA	7.5 A
28		SRS	10 A
29		Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30		ACG	10 A
31		Power Window	10 A
32		Fuel Pump	15 A
33		SRS	(7.5 A)
34		Meter	7.5 A
35		MISS SOL	7.5 A
36		Accessory Power Socket (Front)	20 A
37		ACC	7.5 A
38		ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
39		Option	(10 A)
40		—	(10 A)
41	—	—	—
42	—	—	—

\* Not available on all models



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		EPS	60 A
		IG MAIN* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup>	50 A
		IG MAIN* <sup>3</sup>	30 A
		F/BOX MAIN2	50 A
		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
		F/BOX MAIN	30 A
2		—	40 A
	—	—	—
	—	—	—
	—	—	—
	—	—	—
	—	—	—
3		HTR MTR* <sup>1</sup>	30 A
		HTR MTR* <sup>2</sup> , * <sup>3</sup>	40 A
4	—	—* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup>	—
		IG MAIN2* <sup>3</sup>	30 A
5		ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
6		—	(10 A)
7		—	(7.5 A)
8		ACC SOCKET (CONSOLE)	(20 A)
9		SMALL	10 A

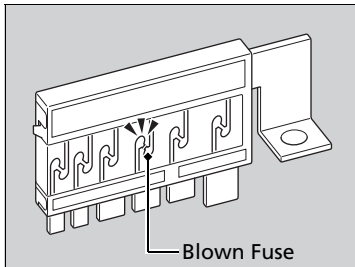
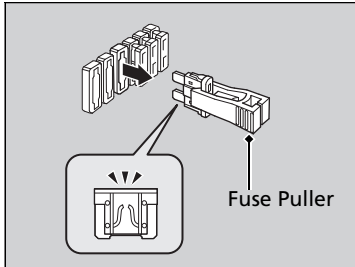
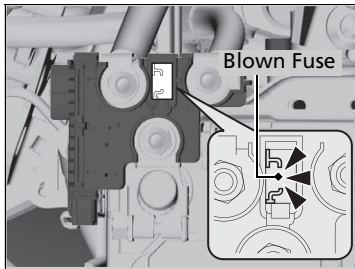
		Circuit Protected	Amps
10		ACC SOCKET (CONSOLE)	(20 A)
11		RR DEF	40 A* 30 A*
12		—* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup>	(7.5 A)
	—	—* <sup>3</sup>	—
13		—	(10 A)
14		BLOWER HI	(7.5 A)
15		FR WIPER* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup>	30 A
	—	—* <sup>3</sup>	—

\*1: Models without rear ventilation and keyless access system

\*2: Models with rear ventilation and without keyless access system

\*3: Models with rear ventilation and keyless access system

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuses in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.
5. Check the large fuse in the vehicle interior.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
6. Inspect the small fuses in the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 440, 442, 443

There is a fuse puller on the type B engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

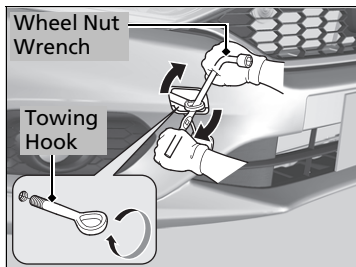
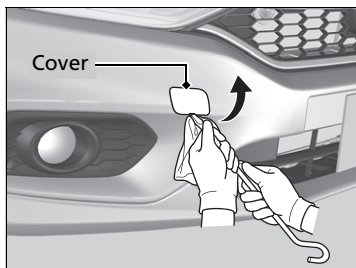
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

# Except Mexican models

## ■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

1. Check the ground underneath the vehicle around where the transmission housing is for a fluid leak.  
▶ If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.



2. Put a cloth on the edge of the cover. Carefully pry with a jack handle bar to remove the cover.  
▶ The detachable towing hook mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.
3. Remove the towing hook and the wheel nut wrench in the boot.
4. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench securely.

▶▶ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries. Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

# Manual transmission models

- Turning the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1 locks the steering wheel.

Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

5. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.

6. Start the engine.

► If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY

**I**\*1 or ON **II**\*1.

#### Continuously variable transmission models

7. Shift to **D** and hold for 5 seconds, then to **N**.

#### Manual transmission models

7. Shift to **N**.

#### All models

8. Release the parking brake.

►► If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

#### NOTICE

##### Continuously variable transmission models

If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

#### NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. This hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.

Make sure to use the properly-designed and attached towing equipment.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	452
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number .....	455
<b>Utility Compliance*</b>	
Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....	456
Environmental Protection Regulation .....	458



## Vehicle Specifications

Model	CITY
	1,074 kg <sup>*1</sup>
	1,075-1,080 kg <sup>*11</sup>
	1,075-1,102 kg <sup>*2</sup>
	1,079-1,100 kg <sup>*3</sup>
	1,080-1,102 kg <sup>*4</sup>
	1,081-1,112 kg <sup>*5</sup>
Curb Weight	1,091-1,221 kg <sup>*1</sup>
	1,092-1,117 kg <sup>*6</sup>
	1,094-1,113 kg <sup>*11</sup>
	1,099-1,125 kg <sup>*2</sup>
	1,100-1,110 kg <sup>*7</sup>
	1,104-1,125 kg <sup>*4</sup>
	1,112-1,124 kg <sup>*8</sup>
	1,480 kg <sup>*1, *3, *11</sup>
	1,490 kg <sup>*9</sup>
	1,492 kg <sup>*5</sup>
	1,495 kg <sup>*3, *10, *11</sup>
	1,500 kg <sup>*1, *7</sup>
	1,510 kg <sup>*9</sup>
	1,530 kg <sup>*8</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight <sup>*10</sup>	Front 795 kg
	Rear 700 kg

\*1: Philippine models

\*2: Caribbean and Central American models

\*3: African, Armenian, Azerbaijani and Georgian models

\*4: Chilean models

\*5: Malaysian models

\*6: Except Latin American, Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese and Vietnamese models

\*7: Taiwanese models

\*8: Vietnamese models

\*9: Latin American except Mexican models

\*10: Cambodian, Laotian and Middle Eastern models

\*11: Mexican models

## Engine Specifications

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder petrol engine
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.0 mm <sup>*2</sup> 73.0 x 89.4 mm <sup>*3</sup>
Displacement	1,497 cm <sup>3</sup>
Compression Ratio	10.3 : 1
Max. Power <sup>*1</sup>	88 kW (118 HP)/6,600 rpm
Max. Torque <sup>*1</sup>	145 N·m (14.8 kgf·m)/4,600 rpm
Max. Speed <sup>*1</sup>	190 km/h
Spark Plugs	NGK DIFR6D13 DENSO DK20PR-D13

\*1: GCC country and Iraqi models

\*2: Philippine models

\*3: Except Philippine models

## Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number
Type	of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

## Battery

Capacity	24AH(5)/30AH(20)* 27AH(5)/30AH(20)* 28AH(5)/35AH(20)* 32AH(5)/40AH(20)*
----------	--

## Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.8 L
---------------	-------

## Light Bulbs

	High beam	60 W (HB3)* LED*
Headlights	Low beam	55 W (H11)* LED*
Front Fog Lights*		35 W (H8)* LED*
Front Turn Signal Lights		21 W (Amber)
Position Lights		LED
Daytime Running Lights		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fender)*		5 W (Amber)
Brake/Taillights		21/5 W* LED*
Taillights		5 W* LED*
Rear Fog Lights*		21 W
Rear Side Marker Lights*		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21 W* 21 W (Amber)*
Back-Up Lights		16 W
High-Mount Brake Light		21 W* LED*
Rear Licence Plate Lights		5 W
Interior Lights		
	Map Light*	8 W
	Ceiling Light	8 W
	Boot Light	5 W

### ■ Brake/Clutch \* Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

### ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid (CVTF)

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid
Capacity	Change 3.4 L

### ■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)
Capacity	Change 1.4 L

### ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity* <sup>1</sup>	4.41 L (change including the remaining 0.44 L in the reserve tank)
Capacity* <sup>2</sup>	4.37 L (change including the remaining 0.44 L in the reserve tank)
Capacity* <sup>3</sup>	3.97 L (change including the remaining 0.44 L in the reserve tank)
Capacity* <sup>4</sup>	4.55 L (change including the remaining 0.44 L in the reserve tank)
Capacity* <sup>5</sup>	4.51 L (change including the remaining 0.44 L in the reserve tank)
Capacity* <sup>6</sup>	4.07 L (change including the remaining 0.44 L in the reserve tank)

\*1: Manual transmission models with heater and breather

\*2: Manual transmission models with heater

\*3: Manual transmission models without heater and breather

\*4: Continuously variable transmission models with heater and breather

\*5: Continuously variable transmission models with heater

\*6: Continuously variable transmission models without heater and breather

### ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Genuine Honda Motor Oil
	API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
Capacity	Change 3.4 L
	Change including filter 3.6 L

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Tyre

Regular	Size <sup>*1</sup>	175/65R15 84T 185/55R16 83H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare <sup>*</sup>	Size	T135/80D15 99M T135/80D15 100M
	Pressure kPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> [psi])	420 (4.2 [60])
Spare <sup>*</sup> (Full-size tyre)	Size	175/65R15 84T 185/55R16 83H
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	15 x 5 1/2J <sup>*2</sup> 16 x 6J <sup>*3</sup>
	Compact Spare <sup>*</sup>	15 x 4T
	Full-size Spare <sup>*</sup>	15 x 5 1/2J <sup>*2</sup>
		16 x 6J <sup>*3</sup>

\*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

\*2: Models with 175/65 R15

\*3: Models with 185/55 R16

## ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Drum
Parking	Mechanical

## ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	375-425 g <sup>*1</sup>
	405-455 g <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: Except Malaysian models

\*2: Malaysian models

## ■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,440 mm <sup>*3, *4, *5</sup>	
	4,442 mm <sup>*6</sup>	
	4,455 mm <sup>*7</sup>	
Width	1,694 mm <sup>*3, *4, *6, *8</sup>	
	1,695 mm <sup>*9</sup>	
Height	1,471 mm <sup>*14</sup>	
	1,475 mm <sup>*10</sup>	
	1,477 mm <sup>*4, *5, *6, *15</sup>	
	1,485 mm <sup>*11</sup>	
	1,487 mm <sup>*8</sup>	
Wheelbase	2,600 mm	
Track <sup>*1</sup>	Front	1,490 mm <sup>*7</sup>
		1,492 mm <sup>*3, *5, *6</sup>
	Rear	1,480 mm <sup>*12</sup>
		1,481 mm <sup>*3, *5, *6, *8, *13</sup>
Track <sup>*2</sup>	Front	1,474 mm <sup>*4, *8, *13</sup>
		1,475 mm <sup>*12</sup>
	Rear	1,476 mm <sup>*3, *5, *6</sup>
	Rear	1,465 mm

\*1: Models with 175/65 R15 tyres

\*2: Models with 185/55 R16 tyres

\*3: Taiwanese models

\*4: Vietnamese models

\*5: Philippine models

\*6: Malaysian models

\*7: Except Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese and Vietnamese models

\*8: Tunisian models

\*9: Except Malaysian, Taiwanese, Tunisian and Vietnamese models

\*10: Cambodian, Laotian and Middle Eastern models

\*11: Except Middle Eastern, Southeast Asian, Taiwanese and Tunisian models

\*12: Except Latin American, Malaysian, Philippine, Taiwanese, Tunisian and Vietnamese models

\*13: Latin American models

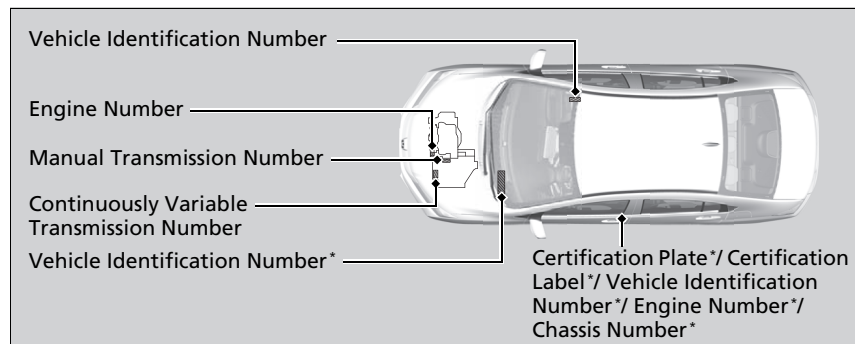
\*14: Taiwanese models without fin antenna

\*15: Taiwanese models with fin antenna

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

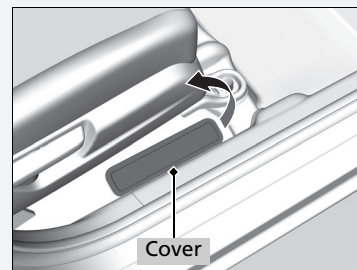
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.

The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



\* Not available on all models

## Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Immobilizer System	Remote Transmitter System	Hands-Free Telephone System*	Keyless Access System*
Nigerian Models	<small>Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission</small>	<small>Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission</small>	<small>Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission</small>	<small>Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission</small>

U.A.E.  
Models

**TRA**  
REGISTERED No:  
ER0108496/13  
DEALER No:  
DA0046049/10

**TRA**  
REGISTERED No:  
ER0108504/13  
DEALER No:  
DA0046049/10

—

SSSW

**TRA**  
REGISTERED No:  
ER35377/14  
DEALER No:  
34163/10

PCU

**TRA**  
REGISTERED No:  
ER0101333/13  
DEALER No:  
DA36975/14

FOB

**TRA**  
REGISTERED No:  
ER0104979/13  
DEALER No:  
DA36975/14

## Utility Compliance\*

### Models under the FCC regulations

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Taiwanese models

The Regulations by Ministry of Transport for the Control of Low Power Equipment:

The regulation of Article 12: Without permission granted by the DGT, any company, enterprise, or user is not allowed to change frequency, enhance transmitting power or alter original characteristic as well as performance to a approved low power radio-frequency devices.

The regulation of Article 14:

The low power radio-frequency devices shall not influence aircraft security and interfere legal communications; If found, the user shall cease operating immediately until no interference is achieved. The said legal communications means radio communications is operated in compliance with the Telecommunications Act. The low power radio-frequency devices must be susceptible with the interference from legal communications or ISM radio wave radiated devices.

Vietnamese models

Keyless Access System



## Environmental Protection Regulation

---

Taiwanese models

### NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.



## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	344
Accessories and Modifications .....	415
Accessory Power Sockets .....	177
<b>Adding</b>	
Coolant .....	377
Engine Oil .....	376
Washer .....	381
<b>Additives, Engine Oil</b> .....	374
<b>Adjusting</b>	
Armrest .....	171
Front Seats .....	164
Headlights .....	156
Mirrors .....	161
Rear Seats .....	170
Steering Wheel .....	160
Temperature .....	108
<b>Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)</b> .....	183
Changing the Mode .....	183
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	185
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	408
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	183, 184
Sensors .....	188
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	183
<b>Air Conditioning System (Heating and Cooling System)</b> .....	179
Cooling .....	181
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	182

Dust and Pollen Filter .....	408
Heating .....	180
<b>Air Pressure</b> .....	454
<b>Airbags</b> .....	47
After a Collision .....	50
Airbag Care .....	59
Event Data Recorder .....	1
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	49
Indicator .....	57, 93
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator .....	58
Sensors .....	47
Side Airbag .....	54
Side Curtain Airbag .....	56
<b>AM/FM Radio</b> .....	200, 224
<b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> .....	344
Indicator .....	93
<b>Armrest</b> .....	171
<b>Audio Remote Controls</b> .....	195
<b>Audio System</b> .....	190
Adjusting the Sound .....	198, 222
Audio System Theft Protection .....	194
Auxiliary Input Jack .....	193
Error Messages .....	243
General Information .....	246
HDMI™ Port .....	192
iPod .....	207, 230
MP3/WMA/AAC .....	203, 210, 227, 233
Recommended CDs .....	246
Recommended Devices .....	248
Remote Controls .....	195
USB Port .....	191

<b>Audio System Theft Protection</b> .....	194
<b>Auto Door Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	124
<b>Automatic Lighting</b> .....	151
<b>Auxiliary Input Jack</b> .....	193
<b>Average Fuel Economy</b> .....	107

## B

<b>Battery</b> .....	403
Charging System Indicator .....	91, 435
Jump Starting .....	430
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) .....	403
<b>Belts (Seat)</b> .....	36
<b>Beverage Holders</b> .....	175
<b>Bluetooth® Audio</b> .....	214, 236
<b>Booster Seats (For Children)</b> .....	84
<b>Boot</b> .....	133
Lid .....	133
Light Bulb .....	393
<b>Brake System</b> .....	342
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	344
Brake Assist System .....	345
Fluid .....	380
Foot Brake .....	343
Indicator .....	90, 436
Parking Brake .....	342
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)</b> .....	158
<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	382
Back-Up Light, Taillight and Rear Fog Light Bulbs .....	389
Boot Light .....	393



Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light			
Bulbs .....	388		
Ceiling Light .....	392		
Fog Lights .....	384		
Headlights .....	382		
High-Mount Brake Light .....	391		
Interior Lights .....	392		
Position Light .....	386		
Rear Licence Plate Light .....	390		
Side Turn Signal Light .....	387		
<b>Bulb Specifications</b> .....	452		
<b>C</b>			
Carbon Monoxide Gas .....	86		
Carrying Luggage .....	313, 315		
CD Player .....	203, 227		
Changing Bulbs .....	382		
Charging System Indicator .....	91, 435		
<b>Child Restraint System</b> .....	60		
Booster Seats .....	84		
Child Restraint System for Infants .....	64		
Child Restraint System for Small Children .....	66		
Installing a Child Restraint System with a			
Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	78		
Larger Children .....	83		
Rearward Facing Child Restraint System .....	64		
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	67		
Using Tether .....	82		
<b>Child Safety</b> .....	60		
Childproof Door Locks .....	123		
Cleaning the Exterior .....	412		
Cleaning the Interior .....	410		
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	183		
Changing the Mode .....	183		
Defrosting the Windscreen and			
Windows .....	185		
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	408		
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	183, 184		
Sensors .....	188		
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	183		
<b>Clock</b> .....	110		
<b>Clutch Fluid</b> .....	380		
<b>Compact Spare Tyre</b> .....	419, 454		
<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	174		
<b>Continuously Variable Transmission</b> .....	324		
Creeping .....	324		
Fluid .....	379		
Kickdown .....	324		
Operating the Shift			
Lever .....	23, 325, 326, 327, 328		
Sequential Shift Mode .....	329		
Shift Lever Does Not Move .....	432		
Shifting .....	325, 327		
<b>Controls</b> .....	109		
<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	377		
Adding to the Radiator .....	378		
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	377		
High Temperature Indicator .....	94		
Low Temperature Indicator .....	94		
Overheating .....	433		
Creeping (Continuously Variable			
Transmission) .....	324		
<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	333		
Indicator .....	101		
<b>Cup Holders</b> .....	175		
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	250		
<b>Customizing the Auto Door Locking/</b>			
Unlocking Setting .....	125		
<b>D</b>			
<b>Dead Battery</b> .....	430		
<b>Deflation Warning System</b> .....	340		
Calibration .....	340		
Indicator .....	96, 438		
<b>Defrosting the Windscreen and</b>			
Windows .....	182, 185		
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	456		
<b>Dimming</b>			
Headlights .....	150		
<b>Dipstick (Engine Oil)</b> .....	375		
<b>Directional Signals (Turn Signals)</b> .....	149		
<b>Display Button</b> .....	217		
<b>Door Mirrors</b> .....	162		
<b>Doors</b> .....	112		
Auto Door Locking .....	124		
Auto Door Unlocking .....	124		
Door/Boot Open Indicator .....	35, 95		
Keys .....	112		
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the			
Inside .....	121		

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	115
Lockout Prevention System .....	120
<b>Driving</b> .....	311
Braking .....	342
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	324
Cruise Control .....	333
Shifting Gear .....	325, 327, 331
Starting the Engine .....	317, 320
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	408

## E

Eco Assist System .....	11
ECON Button .....	332
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator .....	95, 437
Emergency .....	448
Emergency Stop Signal .....	346
<b>Engine</b>	
Coolant .....	377
Jump Starting .....	430
Number .....	455
Oil .....	374
Starting .....	317, 320
Switch Buzzer .....	144
Engine Coolant .....	377
Adding to the Radiator .....	378
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	377
High Temperature Indicator .....	94
Low Temperature Indicator .....	94

Overheating .....	433
<b>Engine Oil</b> .....	374
Adding .....	376
Checking .....	375
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	90, 435
Recommended Engine Oil .....	374
<b>ENGINE START/STOP Button</b> .....	145
<b>EPS (Electric Power Steering)</b>	
System .....	95, 437
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) .....	86
Exterior Care (Cleaning) .....	412
Exterior Mirrors .....	162

## F

Features .....	189
<b>Filter</b>	
Dust and Pollen .....	408
Flat Tyre .....	419
<b>Fluids</b>	
Brake/Clutch .....	380
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	379
Engine Coolant .....	377
Manual Transmission .....	379
Windscreen Washer .....	381
Folding Down the Rear Seats .....	170
Foot Brake .....	343
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	49
Front Fog Light Indicator .....	98
Front Seats .....	164
Adjusting .....	164

<b>Fuel</b> .....	25, 352
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions .....	354
Gauge .....	103, 106
Instant Fuel Economy .....	106
Low Fuel Indicator .....	93
Range .....	107
Recommendation .....	352
Refueling .....	352
<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b> .....	354
<b>Fuel Fill Cap</b> .....	25, 353
<b>Fuel Fill Door</b> .....	25, 353
<b>Fuses</b> .....	440
Inspecting and Changing .....	447
Locations .....	440, 442, 443, 445

## G

<b>Gauges</b> .....	103
<b>Gear Shift Lever Positions</b>	
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	325, 327
Manual Transmission .....	331
<b>Glass (care)</b> .....	410, 413
<b>Glove Box</b> .....	174

## H

- Halogen Bulbs ..... 382, 384
- Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System/  
*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®  
(HFL) ..... 262, 285
  - Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook  
and Call History ..... 298
  - Displaying Messages ..... 307
  - HFT/HFL Buttons ..... 262, 285
  - HFT/HFL Menus ..... 264, 288
  - HFT/HFL Status Display ..... 263, 287
  - Making a Call ..... 280, 301
  - Menus ..... 264, 288
  - Options During a Call ..... 284, 304
  - Phone Setup ..... 268, 292
  - Receiving a Call ..... 283, 304
  - Receiving a Text Message/E-mail ..... 305
  - Ring Tone ..... 297
  - Selecting a Mail Account ..... 306
  - Speed Dial ..... 278, 299
  - Text Message ..... 296, 305
  - To Set Up a Text Message/E-mail  
Options ..... 296
- Hazard Warning Button ..... 4, 5
- HDMI™ Port ..... 192
- Headlights ..... 150
  - Adjuster ..... 156
  - Aiming ..... 382
  - Automatic Operation ..... 151
  - Dimming ..... 150
  - Operating ..... 150
- Heating and Cooling System ..... 179
  - Cooling ..... 181
  - Defrosting the Windscreen and  
Windows ..... 182
  - Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 408
  - Heating ..... 180
- HFL (*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®) ... 262, 285
- HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) ..... 262, 285
- High Beam Indicator ..... 98
- High Temperature Indicator ..... 94
- I**
- Identification Numbers ..... 455
  - Vehicle Identification ..... 455
- Ignition Switch ..... 144
- Illumination Control
  - Knob ..... 158
- Immobilizer System ..... 136
  - Indicator ..... 100
- Indicators ..... 90
  - Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 93
  - Brake System ..... 90
  - Charging System ..... 91
  - Cruise Control ..... 101, 334
  - Cruise Main ..... 101, 333, 334
  - Door/Boot Open ..... 95
  - ECO ..... 100
  - ECON Mode ..... 100
  - Electric Power Steering (EPS) System ..... 95
  - Front Fog Light ..... 98
- High Beam ..... 98
- High Temperature ..... 94
- Immobilizer System ..... 100
- Keyless Access System ..... 99
- Lights On ..... 98
- Low Fuel ..... 93
- Low Oil Pressure ..... 90
- Low Temperature ..... 94
- Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning  
System ..... 96, 438
- Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS ..... 97, 439
- M (Sequential Shift Mode) ..... 92
- Maintenance Required ..... 101
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 91
- Parking Brake and Brake System ..... 90
- Passenger Front Airbag On/Off ..... 94
- Rear Fog Light ..... 98
- Rotate Wheel ..... 101
- Seat Belt Reminder ..... 92
- Security System Alarm ..... 99
- Shift to Park ..... 101
- Speed Alarm ..... 100
- Starter System ..... 101
- Supplemental Restraint System ..... 93
- Transmission ..... 91
- Turn Signal ..... 98
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF ..... 95, 337
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System .. 95, 336
- Instant Fuel Economy ..... 106
- Instrument Panel ..... 89
  - Brightness Control ..... 158

Interior Convenience Items .....	141
Interior Lights.....	172
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	161

## J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench).....	422
Jump Starting.....	430

## K

Key Number Tag .....	113
Keys.....	112
Lockout Prevention .....	120
Number Tag.....	113
Rear Door Won't Open .....	123
Remote Transmitter .....	115
Types and Functions.....	112
Won't Turn .....	28
Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission).....	324

## L

Language (HFT/HFL).....	263, 287
Light Switches .....	150
Lights .....	150, 382
Automatic.....	151
Bulb Replacement.....	382
Fog Lights .....	153
High-Beam Indicator Light.....	98
Interior.....	172

Lights On Indicator .....	98
Turn Signals.....	149
Load Limits.....	315
Locking/Unlocking .....	112
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	124
Childproof Door Locks .....	123
From Inside.....	121
From Outside.....	115
Keys .....	112
Using a Key .....	119
Lockout Prevention System.....	120
Low Battery Charge.....	435
Low Fuel Indicator .....	93
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	90, 435
Low Temperature Indicator .....	94
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System	
Indicator .....	96, 438
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator .....	97, 439
Lower Anchorages.....	75
Lubricant Specifications Chart .....	453
Luggage (Load Limit) .....	315

## M

M (Sequential Shift Mode) Indicator.....	92
Maintenance .....	355
Battery .....	403
Brake/Clutch Fluid .....	380
Cleaning.....	410

Climate Control.....	408
Coolant.....	377
Heating and Cooling System .....	408
Oil.....	375
Precautions .....	356
Radiator .....	378
Remote Transmitter .....	406
Replacing Light Bulbs .....	382
Safety.....	357
Transmission Fluid .....	379
Tyres .....	396
Under the Bonnet.....	372
Maintenance Reminder .....	101
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	91, 436
Manual Transmission .....	331
Map Lights .....	173
Maximum Permissible Weight.....	315
Meters, Gauges.....	103
Mirrors .....	161
Adjusting .....	161
Door .....	162
Exterior .....	162
Interior Rear View.....	161
Modifications (and Accessories) .....	415
MP3 .....	203, 210, 227, 233
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	351

## N

Numbers (Identification) ..... 455

## O

Odometer ..... 106

Oil (Engine) ..... 374

Adding ..... 376

Checking ..... 375

Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 90, 435

Recommended Engine Oil ..... 374

Viscosity ..... 374

### Opening/Closing

Bonnet ..... 373

Boot ..... 133

Power Windows ..... 141

Outside Temperature ..... 108

Adjusting ..... 108

Overheating ..... 433

## P

### Paddle Shifters (Sequential Shift

Mode) ..... 23, 329

Parking Brake ..... 342

### Parking Brake and Brake System

Indicator ..... 90, 436

Parking Sensor System ..... 348

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ..... 58, 94

Passing Indicators ..... 150

Petrol ..... 25, 352

Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions ..... 354

Gauge ..... 103, 106

Information ..... 352

Instant Fuel Economy ..... 106

Low Fuel Indicator ..... 93

Refueling ..... 352

Precautions While Driving ..... 323

Rain ..... 323

Pregnant Women ..... 44

Puncture (Tyre) ..... 419

## R

Radiator ..... 378

Radio (AM/FM) ..... 200, 224

Rear Demister Button/Icon ..... 159

Rear Fog Light Indicator ..... 98

Rear Seats (Folding Down) ..... 170

Rear View Mirror ..... 161

Refueling ..... 352

Fuel Gauge ..... 103, 106

Low Fuel Indicator ..... 93

Petrol ..... 352, 452

Regulations ..... 456

Remote Transmitter ..... 115

### Replacement

Battery ..... 403

Bulbs ..... 382

Fuses ..... 440, 442, 443, 445

Tyres ..... 419

Wiper Blade Rubber ..... 394

Resetting a Trip Meter ..... 106

## S

Safe Driving ..... 31

Safety Check ..... 35

Safety Labels ..... 87

Safety Message ..... 0

Seat Belts ..... 36

Checking ..... 45

Fastening ..... 41

Installing a Child Restraint System with a

Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ..... 78

Pregnant Women ..... 44

Reminder ..... 39

Warning Indicator ..... 39, 92

Seats ..... 164

Adjusting ..... 164

Front Seats ..... 164

Rear Seats ..... 170

Security System ..... 136

Immobilizer System Indicator ..... 100

Security System Alarm Indicator ..... 99

SEL/RESET Knob ..... 104

Select Lever ..... 325, 327, 331

Selecting a Child Restraint System ..... 67

Selector Knob (Audio) ..... 197

Sequential Shift Mode ..... 329

Setting the Clock ..... 110

<b>Shift Lever</b> .....	325, 327, 331
Operation .....	325, 327, 331
Releasing .....	432
Shift Lever Position Indicator (Transmission Indicator) .....	326, 328
Won't Move .....	432
<b>Shift to Park Indicator</b> .....	101
<b>Shifting (Transmission)</b> .....	325, 327, 331
<b>Side Airbags</b> .....	54
<b>Side Curtain Airbag</b> .....	56
<b>SMS Text Message</b> .....	296, 305
<b>Spare Tyre</b> .....	419, 454
<b>Spark Plugs</b> .....	452
<b>Specifications</b> .....	452
<b>Specified Fuel</b> .....	352
<b>Speed Alarm Indicator</b> .....	100
<b>Speedometer</b> .....	103
<b>SRS Airbags (Airbags)</b> .....	49
<b>Starter System Indicator</b> .....	101
<b>Starting the Engine</b> .....	317, 320
Does Not Start .....	427
Engine Switch Buzzer .....	144
Jump Starting .....	430
<b>Steering Wheel</b> .....	160
Adjusting .....	160
<b>Stopping</b> .....	347
<b>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)</b> .....	49
<b>Switches (Around the Steering     Wheel)</b> .....	4, 5, 6, 144

## T

<b>Tachometer</b> .....	103
<b>Temperature</b>	
High Temperature Indicator .....	94
Low Temperature Indicator .....	94
Outside Temperature Display .....	108
<b>Temperature Sensor</b> .....	108, 188
<b>Text Message</b> .....	296, 305
<b>Time (Setting)</b> .....	110
<b>Tools</b> .....	418
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	316
<b>Towing Your Vehicle</b>	
Emergency .....	448
<b>Transmission</b> .....	325, 327, 331
CVT .....	325, 327
Fluid .....	379
Gear Position Indicator .....	92
Indicator .....	91
Manual .....	331
Number .....	455
Sequential Shift Mode .....	329
Shift Lever Position Indicator (Transmission Indicator) .....	91, 326, 328
<b>Trip Meter</b> .....	106
<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	417
Blown Fuse .....	440, 442, 443, 445
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	28
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	29
Emergency Towing .....	448
Engine Won't Start .....	427
Noise When Braking .....	30

Overheating .....	433
Puncture/Flat Tyre .....	419
Rear Door Won't Open .....	29
Shift Lever Won't Move .....	432
Warning Indicators .....	90
<b>Turn signals</b> .....	149
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	98
<b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System     (TPMS)</b> .....	338
Indicator .....	97, 439
TPMS Calibration .....	338
<b>Tyres</b> .....	396
Air Pressure .....	454
Checking and Maintaining .....	396
Inspection .....	397
Puncture (Flat Tyre) .....	419
Rotation .....	400
Spare Tyre .....	419, 454
Tyre Chains .....	401
Wear Indicators .....	398
Winter .....	401

## U

<b>Unlocking the Doors</b> .....	115
<b>Unlocking the Front Doors from the     Inside</b> .....	121
<b>USB Flash Drives</b> .....	248
<b>USB Port</b> .....	191
<b>Utility Pocket</b> .....	178

## V

Vanity Mirrors .....	9
Vehicle Identification Number .....	455
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) .....	336
Off Button .....	337
OFF Indicator .....	95
System Indicator .....	95
Ventilation .....	179, 183
Viscosity (Oil) .....	374, 453
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) .....	336

## W

Warning and Information Messages .....	102
Warning Indicator On/Blinking .....	435
Warning Labels .....	87
Watts .....	452
Wear Indicators (Tyre) .....	398
Wheel Cover .....	421
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) .....	422
Window Washers	
Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	381
Switch .....	157
Windows (Opening and Closing) .....	141
Windscreen	
Cleaning .....	410, 413
Defrosting/Defogging .....	182, 185
Washer Fluid .....	381
Wiper Blades .....	394
Wipers and Washers .....	157

Winter Tyres .....	401
Tyre Chains .....	401
Wipers and Washers .....	157
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades .....	394
WMA .....	203, 210, 227, 233
Worn Tyres .....	396





